Landing of the Pilgrims.

"Tradition says it was the foot of Mary Chilton, a young maiden of the band, that first pressed "Forefather's Rock," as it is still named and honored by their descendants." — (Page 13.)

SCHOOL HISTORY

OF

THE UNITED STATES.

BY

A. B. BERARD.

"WESTWARD THE COURSE OF EMPIRE TAKES ITS WAY."

PHILADELPHIA:
H. COWPERTHWAIT & CO.
1855.

STEREOTYPED BY J. FAGAN.

PREFACE.

THE writer of this little volume has endeavored to select the leading facts of our nation's history, and present them in a manner suited to the youthful mind. There is nothing of fiction or fable, and great care has been taken to throw around actual events no other interest than such as springs from well-authenticated narrative. On the other hand, she has omitted many minor details, and aimed at lasting impressions without overtaxing the memory. If she has succeeded in tracing a distinct outline and promoting a love for the study, the filling up of that outline will readily follow, as the pupil advances to graver histories. An experience of six years as an instructress in the department of history, has growingly confirmed the writer in this method of pursuing such studies with the young.

The Colonial History is given in three divisions — the New England, the Middle, and the Southern States. The War of Independence is then briefly traced — the several Administrations noticed, and a cursory view of the entire history of the Western States added. A chapter on

"Progress," comparing early facts with present growth and prospects, closes the volume.

The writer acknowledges the aid received from various standard works upon the subject. For facts, and occasionally for modes of expression, she has been especially indebted to Bancroft's "History of the United States," and to Lossing's "Field-Book of the Revolution;" and the generous permission given for the use she has made of these authorities, is respectfully and warmly appreciated.

The present opportunity is also taken for tendering thanks to several experienced instructors, who have with patient kindness rendered essential service, by their valuable advice, during the progress of the work.

The illustrations are all original, and in every instance, have been prepared expressly for this volume, by Mr. S. Merrick, Jr.

This little text-book is now commended to the public, and especially to teachers, in the hope that it may not be without its use in promoting, in the youth of our land, an ardent love for the deeply interesting history of their own country.

West Point, August 1, 1855.

TABLE OF CONTENTS.

HISTORY

OF

THE UNITED STATES.

CHAPTER I.

INTRODUCTORY.

EARLY SETTLEMENTS AROUND MASSACHUSETTS BAY.

THE country whose history we are to study is called "THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA," now consisting of thirty-one States and eight Territories.

This country is bounded on the north by the great Lakes and the British possessions, on the south by the Gulf of Mexico and Mexico, on the east by the Atlantic, and on the west by the Pacific Ocean.

The early inhabitants of this country were the North American Indians, but they as a people have long since passed away, although a remnant yet lingers in some of the States, and a number of small tribes are to be found in the Indian, and other Territories, and beyond the Rocky Mountains. The people whose history we would learn are the European colonists, who, in the providence of God, have been permitted to spread themselves over this broad land, and to make it the prosperous country in which it is our privilege to live.

Of what does the United States consist? — Give the boundaries. — What of the early inhabitants? — Of what people are you to learn?

You all know the story of Christopher Columbus, who, under the patronage of the good Queen Isabella of Spain, discovered, in 1492, the New World. You may have read, too, of the daring but cruel Cortez and Pizarro, who founded kingdoms in Mexico and Peru; but these stories belong to the History of America, and we shall begin only with those settlements founded within the present limits of the United States.

The three oldest towns in our country are, St. Augustine, in Florida, founded in 1565 by the Spaniards; Jamestown, in Virginia, in 1607, by the English; and Plymouth, in Massachusetts, in 1620, also by the English.

At the time of these early settlements, the country was not divided into States as you now find it on your maps; no English name was given to it, and it was occupied only by the forests and hunting-grounds, and scattered wigwam villages of the Indians.

The first English name by which it was called was Virginia. This was in the reign of Queen Elizabeth, during which some vain attempts at settlement were made. Afterwards in the reign of King James, the country extending between North Carolina and Nova Scotia, was divided into two portions and named North and South Virginia. Later in the same reign, Captain John Smith made a map of the region of country, now known as the Eastern States, and presented it to Prince Charles, who named the country New England.

We will learn in order something of the history of New England, the Middle States, and the Southern States, up to the time when all these colonies united in resisting England, at which period we shall carry on their history as one.

Who discovered America, and when? — What Spaniards founded kingdoms? — Name the three oldest towns in the United States? — Describe the condition of the country at its early settlement. — What were the first English names given to it? — In what order are we to proceed?

NEW ENGLAND.

"The heavy night hung dark
The hills and waters o'er,
When a band of exiles moored their bark
On the wild New England shore."—HEMANS.

THE History of New England commences with the landing of the Pilgrim Fathers.

The Pilgrim Fathers were Englishmen, belonging to a sect of Christians called Puritans. In the reign of the Roman Catholic Queen Mary of England, their ancestors had been driven to the Continent, where they had learned a more simple mode of worship than that practised by the English Church. When, therefore, on the accession of Queen Elizabeth they returned to their country, they refused to become members of the Church of England, or to submit to its usages. They would not use its Book of Common Prayer, nor wear the surplice. In those days, men had not learned "as far as in them lieth to live peaceably with all men," and so the *Puritans*, as they were nicknamed, were persecuted for their non-conformity, as it was called.

They endured these persecutions of greater or less severity for about fifty years, and then, in 1608, a small congregation of them fled to Holland. Here they remained twelve years, at the end of which time they resolved to go to America and form a settlement at the mouth of the Hudson river. They left Holland in a small vessel, called the "Speedwell," and sailed for England. Here they remained a fortnight, and then, taking leave of their friends, set sail for America. The "Speedwell" proving unseaworthy, they were obliged to put back: this vessel, with those of her company whose courage failed them, were dismissed, and the remainder crowded into the "May Flower." 1608.

Repeat the motto. — Who were the Pilgrim Fathers? — Whence did they receive their mode of worship? — How were they treated on their return to England? — Whither did they flee? — What resolution did they form? — To what country did they first sail? — What happened to the "Speedwell?"

1620. At last, on the 6th September 1620, this frail bark, bearing her precious burden, lost sight of English ground. The number of the Pilgrims was one hundred and one. Among them were John Carver, their first Governor, Elder Brewster, their pastor for the time, Miles Standish, their military Captain, William Bradford, Edward Winslow, and William White. There were women too on board. No doubt, during the three months that their little bark was tossed upon the ocean, the sound of prayer was daily, almost hourly, heard among them, and "He who ruleth the raging of the sea, heard their cry and helped them," and because they honored Him, He has honored them in making them the forefathers of a great and good people.

While on ship-board they drew up a body of laws which they resolved to obey, and chose John Carver as their Governor. This first American constitution was drawn up and signed on the lid of a chest, belonging to Elder Brewster. This chest of Norway pine is preserved in the Athenæum at Hartford, and has another interesting association. It served in Elder Brewster's family as a table, and during the famine which followed when they were obliged to live solely upon clams, the good old man was wont, when asking a blessing, to thank God, "who had yet given them of the treasures hid in the sand."

Owing to the ignorance of the Captain, the "May Flower" was brought upon the barren coast of Massachusetts. The bitter months of November and December found this little vessel tossing upon the waters of Cape Cod Bay, instead of casting anchor, as the Pilgrims had hoped, in the milder latitude of the harbor of New York.

Many interesting events occurred between the day of their first mooring and their final landing. One of these was the birth of Peregrine White, the first English boy born in the Colony. Mr. White died shortly after his son's birth, and his widow then

How many left England, and when? — Name some of the Pilgrims. — How did they acknowledge their dependence upon God? — What did the passengers adopt? — Relate the anecdote of Elder Brewster's chest. — What coast did the "May Flower" reach, and when? — Mention some events which occurred on ship-board, in Cape Cod Bay.

married Mr. Edward Winslow. She was thus the first English mother and bride in New England.

Much of the time was spent in exploring the coast for a suitable landing place. During one of these excursions they were in great peril, having broken the rudder and mast of their little shallop. They reached a rocky island, but it cost them the whole of the following day, which was Saturday, to repair the boat. The Sabbath drew on — they were fifteen leagues away from the "May Flower," and they knew the hearts within her must be anxious for their safety, — eighteen inches of snow covered the ground, they had neither tent nor shelter, but "they remembered the Sabbath day to keep it holy." In the deep snow they knelt, and the keen frosty air echoed their hymns of praise. On the following Monday, Plymouth Rock was discovered to be a suitable place for landing; the "May Flower" was brought round, and on Monday, the 21st of December, these sea-wearied Pilgrims stepped ashore. Tradition says it was the foot of Mary Chilton, a young maiden of the band, that first pressed "Forefather's Rock," as it is still named and honored by their descendants.

Thus commenced, in faith and hope, this first New England Colony. It was named Plymouth from the last place parted from in England. Severe trials surrounded them in their new home. Disease and famine did their fearful work among them; Governor Carver, his wife and child, died during the winter, and by spring only forty-six of the one hundred passengers who came in the "May Flower," were living. 1620.

But although exposed to these trials, they were mercifully preserved from the murderous tomahawk of the Indian, a pestilence having the previous year carried off the more dangerous of these savage neighbors. The first Indian they saw, met them with the cheering salutation, "Welcome Englishmen! Welcome Englishmen!" His name was Samoset: he came from what is now Maine, and had learned to speak 1620 & 1621.

Describe the adventures of an exploring party. — When, and where, did they land? — What did they name the place? — Describe their sufferings the first winter. — From what calamity were they preserved? — Describe their first meeting with Indians.

English from the captain of a fishing vessel on the coast. He gave the information that Massasoit, the great Indian chief of that region, was approaching with sixty men. The Governor engaged Samoset as an interpreter, and by means of a few kindly presents, the Sachem's good will was secured, and a treaty made, which was faithfully kept for more than fifty years. Through Massasoit's influence, ninety less powerful chiefs were brought into treaty with the English; and the only hostile one, Canonicus, was awed when the Governor returned the arms and rattlesnake skin, which the savage chieftain had sent in token of defiance, stuffing the latter with powder and ball.

1620 to 1630.

During the ten years following the landing of the Pilgrims, various individuals and parties settled around the shores of Massachusetts Bay; at Salem, at Charlestown, and at Cambridge. It would be well to inform you by what means colonists were enabled to emigrate to this country.

Merchants, residing chiefly in London and in the west of England, formed themselves into companies, and obtained from the King grants to settle particular "Plantations" in America, with certain rights and privileges of government, and commerce. These grants were called charters. The company furnished ships and sent out colonists, who were to cultivate the ground and procure fish and furs. The profits on these articles, it was expected, would repay the company in England for the expense of sending them out. Several members of the Massachusetts Bay company, gentlemen of family and fortune, agreed themselves to go out to New England, provided the charter should be carried to America, and the government not managed by a council of the company in England, as was usually the case.

This privilege being granted, Mr. Winthrop, and many other distinguished men, embarked for New England. They sailed from the Isle of Wight on the 8th of April, 1630. After a somewhat

What information did they gain from Samoset? — What did they obtain from Massasoit? — Name the settlements made between 1620–1630. — How were companies for purposes of emigration formed? — What were charters? — What did these companies expect of the colonists? — What led Mr. Winthrop to come to New England?

boisterous voyage, their little fleet of five vessels anchored safely at Charlestown. Here they were kindly received, 1630. and began to build, intending to make it their permanent home. But this was not the design of God regarding them. They found but one spring of water, and that so brackish, that disease carried off many of their number.

The new Colony was threatened with destruction, when a deliverer was raised up for them. Mr. William Blackstone, a kind, but eccentric old man, had built his solitary cottage on a peninsula, on the south side of Charles river. The English called it Trimountain, but the Indians gave it the name of Shawmut, signifying, in their language, "living fountains." To these healthful waters, were Governor Winthrop and his suffering Colony invited, by Mr. Blackstone, and gladly did they remove thither.

They named their new settlement Boston, in honor of the Rev. Mr. Colton, a much-beloved pastor of Boston, England, who afterwards joined the Colonies, and was highly honored there.

One of the first acts of the Colony, was to draw up a "Confession of Faith," and enter into a church covenant: this was done with the utmost solemnity, after a day of fasting and prayer. Mr. Blackstone, who was an Episcopalian, was invited to join this church, but he replied very quaintly, "I came from England because I did not like the Lord Bishops; but I cannot join with you because I would not be under the Lord Brethren."

And now the little village of Boston grew rapidly. Industry, sobriety, and honesty, marked its character. The Governor himself set a good example, by discouraging the drinking of toasts, and forbidding cards and gaming tables. A man was whipped for stealing a loaf of bread, and another for shooting fowl on Sunday. Carpenters and masons worked diligently 1631. at their trades, and stone houses began to rise. Vessels too were built to traffic with other settlements on the coast; and one

Describe his voyage. — Where and how were they received? — Why did they not remain at Charlestown? — Whither were they invited? — What name was given to their settlement? — Into what did the colonists enter? — Who was invited to join them, and how did he reply? — What of Boston at this time? — What of their trades and ship-building?

launched on the 4th of July, 1631, was called "The Blessing of the Bay." Education was not neglected: in eight years after the landing of this Colony, Harvard College was founded, and named in honor of Mr. John Harvard, who, dying in 1638, left to this Institution the sum of £800. In this College, the year of its foundation, a printing-press was set up by a man named Glover, but we hear little of the progress of this art during the first forty years of New England history

The year after the Colony was established, Mrs. Gov. Winthrop joined her husband; and in the same vessel came out Mr. John Eliot, the first Missionary to the Indians. He settled at Roxbury, and here began his labors among the heathen, which were carried on for sixty years. He visited them in their wigwams, teaching them to read and to pray, and he translated the Bible into their language. A copy of this old book is still preserved, in Eliot's handwriting, but only the title, "Up Biblum God," signifying "The Book of God," can now be read. The language in which it is written has perished with the race. We may not read it, but

"Hearts are in Heaven which understand it well."

So successful were this good man's labors, that after his death the number of "praying Indians," as those who became Christians were called, amounted to five thousand.

Between the years 1630 and 1636, we find the settlements belonging to the Massachusetts Bay company, rapidly increasing. Persecution in England was sending many wise and able men to the Colonies. Among them came Sir Henry Vane, a friend of the poet Milton. He so won the hearts of the people, that at one time they made him governor. But though an earnest and good man, he was not a very safe one, and becoming the supporter of the party of Mrs. Ann Hutchinson, he led himself and the Colonies into serious difficulties. This Mrs. Hutchinson held many strange and unscriptural doctrines. She

1635.

When was Harvard College founded? — What Missionary came to New England in 1631? — Where did he settle? — Describe his labors and success. — What drove many from England to the Colonies? — Who arrived in 1635?

believed, for instance, that equally with "holy men of old," she and her followers were favored with special divine revelations. This party, opposing the ministers and magistrates of the Colony, created great disturbances. At length, Sir Henry Vane returned to England, and Mrs. Hutchinson and her followers were banished from Massachusetts.

The Puritans were too earnest in their faith to live in peace with those who differed from them. Not only were the followers of Mrs. Hutchinson persecuted and banished, but the Quakers and Baptists also were cruelly treated, four of the former being put to death on account of their opinions.

We shall now leave, for a time, the Colonies of the Massachusetts Bay company, which already numbered twenty settlements, and turn to other parts of New England. 1636.

What doctrines did Mrs. Hutchinson teach? — What became of her and her followers? — Who were persecuted by the Puritans? — Number of settlements in 1636.

Review Questions. — Describe the boundaries of the United States. — Who were its original inhabitants, and what has become of them? — Name the three oldest towns in the United States, and describe the condition of the country at the time of its discovery.

Who were the Puritans? — Relate the history of the Pilgrim Fathers to the time of their coming to America. — What is said of their voyage? — Of their landing? — Of their interview with the Indians?

Relate the settlement of Boston. — What of its prosperity and morality? — What of Eliot?

Relate what is said of Sir Henry Vane and Mrs. Hutchinson? — Who were persecuted in the Massachusetts Bay Colonies.

CHAPTER II.

RHODE ISLAND, CONNECTICUT, AND UNION OF THE NEW ENGLAND COLONIES.

"And can we deem it strange
That from their planting such a branch should bloom
As nations envy?"

SIGOURNEY.

RHODE ISLAND.

THE history of Rhode Island is so nearly connected with that of Roger Williams, its founder, that a sketch of his interesting biography will be sufficient to introduce you to his Colony.

Roger Williams was born in the year 1598, in Wales. He was educated at the University of Oxford, in England, but afterwards became a Puritan and a non-conformist. He possessed a pure, noble mind, and a heart filled with that charity which "suffereth long and is kind." He had thought long and seriously about the evils of intolerance, and had come to the conclusion that "the doctrine of persecution is most lamentably contrary to the doctrine of Christ Jesus," and determined very earnestly never to submit to those who practised it. With this determination, however, he united the grace of an overflowing charity towards all men. He hated persecution, but he loved his persecutors, and we shall presently see how he proved his sincerity, by returning good for evil.

In the year 1631, when little more than thirty years of age, he came to Massachusetts, and was invited to Salem as a religious teacher. His listeners became warmly attached to him, but his enlarged views, so far beyond those of the age and Colony in which he lived, alarmed the Boston Puritans, and made him ene-

Repeat the motto. — When, and where, was Roger Williams born, and where educated? — Describe his character. — How did he regard persecution? — When did he come to Massachusetts, and where did he settle?

mies. They were much shocked at his saying that civil magistrates were bound to protect the life and property of peaceful citizens, of *whatever* name or creed; that it was their duty to restrain crime, but not to control opinion. The number of those who opposed Roger Williams increased. Even his wife was for a time influenced by his enemies, and his home was made unhappy.

At last, the sentence of banishment was pronounced. 1635.
Williams hoped to remain until spring, but the prospect of losing him awakened all the affection of his people, and the General Court, fearing his influence, commanded him to embark for England. Officers were sent to convey him to the vessel, but Roger Williams had fled from Salem. For fourteen weeks he was a wanderer in the wilderness, "sorely tost in a bitter 1636.
season, not knowing what bread or bed did mean." He found kind friends in the Indians, whose language he had learned, and to whom he was ever a patient missionary. Massasoit and the chief of the Narragansetts received him as their guest, and "thus," he says, "the ravens fed me in the wilderness."

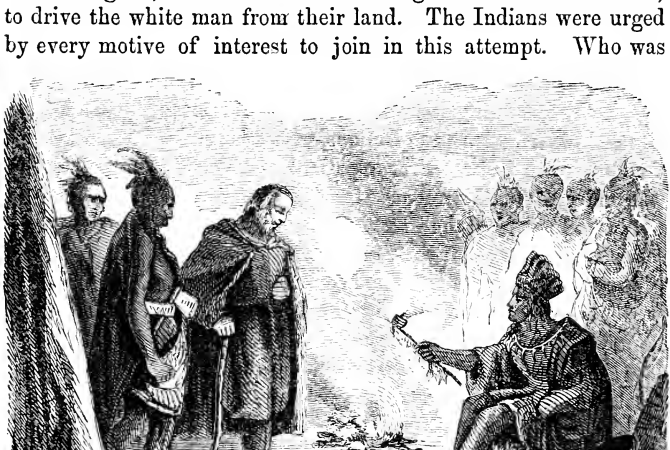
In the midst of all these persecutions, Roger Williams showed a kindly spirit towards his oppressors: he says, "I did ever from my soul honor and love them, even when their judgment led them to afflict me." He settled first at Seekonk, but this being within the limits of the Plymouth Colony, he was advised by Governor Winslow, to "steer his course to the Narragansett Bay," which was as yet unclaimed by any English patent. Regarding this as "a voice from God," he embarked in his Indian canoe, and with a few companions, crossed the stream. The spot on which they landed he named Providence, in grateful acknowledgment of the Hand which had guided his wanderings. "I desired it might be a shelter for persons distressed for conscience," was the Christian motto which this good man chose for his Colony.

Williams met our old friend Mr. Blackstone of Boston, in the new colony. The latter had planted the first apple-orchard there,

What opinions procured him enemies? — How far did they proceed against him? — Describe his wanderings in the wilderness. — Where did he first settle? — What spirit did he manifest towards his enemies? — Why did he remove, and where did he go? — What did he name his new home, and what design it for?

and was busily employed in cultivating "yellow-sweetings," and preaching to the Indians. He was too odd a man to agree with Roger Williams in all things, but he often visited him and preached for him at Providence. In their love and labor for the Indians, these Christian men were truly united.

And now an Indian war drew on: the country between the Connecticut river and Narragansett Bay, was thickly peopled by Indian tribes. Of these, the Pequods, Mohegans, and Narragansetts, were the most powerful. The Pequods, dreading the power of the English, endeavored to form a league with the other tribes, to drive the white man from their land. The Indians were urged by every motive of interest to join in this attempt. Who was



Roger Williams before the Sachem of the Narragansetts

there to intercede for the English with the savage foe? One man could do it: he knew their language; they loved and honored

Where were the Indians most numerous? —What Indian league threatened the settlements? — Relate the means by which this league was prevented.

him, but would he do it? Would Roger Williams plead for his persecutors? Yes! he had learned the beautiful lesson, "to overcome evil with good." Alone, in a frail canoe, in a storm, and at the risk of his life, he visited the Sachem of these tribes. The Pequod messengers were there. They were fresh from the murder of one Colonist;—would they spare him who had come to thwart their designs of revenge? God restrained their wrath, and put a word in his mouth to which the savages listened, and the colonists were saved.

In the spring of 1638, the time of the Hutchinson difficulties, a number of her followers, headed by John Clark and William Coddington, left Massachusetts, and being kindly received by Roger Williams, they obtained from the Indians the large island in Narragansett Bay, settled there, and called it Rhode Island, because of a fancied resemblance to the little Island of Rhodes, in the Mediterranean Sea, so celebrated for its beauty. Such was the early settlement of 1638.

"Rhode Island, the land where the exile sought rest,
The Eden where wandered the Pilgrim oppressed."

CONNECTICUT.

THE founders of the busy little State of Connecticut were of the excellent of the earth, and between the years 1633 and 1636, four flourishing villages had sprung up on the banks of its beautiful river. The earliest was at Windsor; others followed at Hartford, Saybrook, and Wethersfield, and in 1638, on the shores of Long Island Sound, New Haven, now one of the loveliest cities in all New England, was founded by a Puritan pastor.

One of the most interesting migrations to Connecticut from the Bay colonies, was conducted by the Rev. Thomas Hooker. He

What led to the settlement of Rhode Island? — Why so named? — Mention the earliest settlements in Connecticut. — Who was the Rev. Thomas Hooker?

was an English minister, of such persuasive eloquence, that his preaching attracted crowded congregations in England. Induced by Governor Winthrop to come to the Colonies, he was received in Massachusetts by some of his own people, who had preceded him. They thronged the beach to testify their welcome, and springing ashore, he embraced them with open arms, exclaiming, in the words of St. Paul, "Now I live if ye stand fast in the Lord."

An old writer says of Hooker, "He is the one rich pearl, with which England more than repaid America for the treasures from her coast."

1636. This good man, with one hundred of his flock, left Cambridge in the April of 1636, for the rich and beautiful valley of the Connecticut river,—"the pleasant country," as it was called by the Indian Sachem, who first invited the Plymouth people to settle there. The little band travelled on foot over the hills and streams and through the forests, which lay between them and their new strange home. They lived chiefly on the milk of the herds and flocks, which they drove before them, and were cheered and sustained by the fervent piety of their excellent pastor. The great proportion of the people settled at Hartford, whilst others went to Wethersfield; and a few from Roxbury sailed higher up the Connecticut river, and founded Springfield, in Massachusetts.

1638. The Colony of New Haven is remarkable for the religious spirit which marked its laws. The first congregation assembled under a branching oak, and in framing their government, determined that "all of them would be ordered by the rules which the Scripture held forth to them." They prospered, and planted many a pleasant village along the Sound and on the shores of Long Island. This Colony was distinct from the Connecticut Colony. The latter included the settlements at Hartford, Windsor, Wethersfield, &c. New Haven had its own governor,

How was he received in Massachusetts? — When did he lead a colony from Cambridge? — Describe its progress. — Where did his people settle? — For what was the colony of New Haven remarkable?

of whom the first, Theophilus Eaton was elected for twenty successive years, until his death.

The early settlers of Connecticut were surrounded by perils, and had need of those virtues of patience and perseverance, which have given to this little State the name of "the land of steady habits." They had but few implements of husbandry; hardly a yoke of oxen, or a plough, wherewith to clear and cultivate their forest fields. They found unfriendly neighbors in the Dutch, who claimed their country, and worse than all, they were exposed to a savage Indian foe. They suffered much from the hostility of the Pequods, who, although they could not obtain the alliance of the other Indian tribes, yet made the situation of the colony very insecure. The infant was not safe in its cradle, nor the mother and children in their cottage: even when at work, the colonists carried their arms, and when gathered for worship, the muskets were stacked at the door, and a sentry was left to keep watch. Several murders had been committed, the whole colony was threatened, and there seemed to be no choice but to make war on these savage neighbors.

In May of the year 1637, with a band of ninety men, seventy from Connecticut, and twenty contributed by the Bay Colony, the Puritans entered upon their first warfare. They began this, as every other undertaking, with prayer, and a Sabbath occurring during their march, they rested and observed it. The Indians, relying on their numbers, their arrows, which had ever proved such deadly weapons in their hands, and their rush-work forts, believed themselves secure against the little band of seventy-seven,—for to this was their number reduced before the assailants reached the Indian strongholds. 1637.

About eight miles north-east of the present town of New London, stood the principal Pequod fort, and to attack it the colonist soldiers now directed their march. The Indians had set no

Who was the first Governor? — What difficulties beset the early colonists of Connecticut? — Describe the dangers to which Indian hostility exposed them. — What did they determine to do? — What was the number of their army? — How did they enter upon their warfare? — On what did the Indians rely for defence? — Against what fort did the soldiers march?

sentry, and the barking of a dog gave the first alarm of the enemy's approach. In confusion, amid cries of "Owanux!" "Owanux!" (The English! The English!) they rallied with bow and arrow for the fight. It was soon ended; their fort and wigwams were burned, and six hundred Indians slain. The few that survived this slaughter were driven from their country, until there remained of this entire and once powerful tribe, not one who bore the Pequod name.

Connecticut, now free from danger, grew and prospered. It was her happy lot to be blessed with God-fearing governors. Her population doubled once in every twenty years for a century, and thus grew up a hardy and industrious race, cultivating alike the rugged and the fertile soil.

MAINE AND NEW HAMPSHIRE.

LET us now glance at the settlements of Maine and New Hampshire. The territory comprising these States was divided between Sir Ferdinand Gorges, John Mason, and others. They planted at Portsmouth, Dover, and on the coast of Maine, a few settlements, but they established no wise government, and in a few years, both these colonies placed themselves under the government of Massachusetts, and sent representatives to the General Court. New Hampshire united with Massachusetts in 1641, and Maine in 1652.

1623 to 1630.

In the year 1680 the king of England made New Hampshire a royal province. In after years, when Massachusetts had lost her charter, and was under royal rule, the two provinces were occasionally united under one governor. In 1741 they were finally separated, and from that time until the war of Independence, the two colonies had separate royal governors.

Describe the attack. — What was the result? — What was the condition of Connecticut after the Pequod war? — Who owned the territory of Maine and New Hampshire? — Where were settlements planted? — What became of these colonies?

THE UNION OF THE COLONIES.

THE various dangers to which the New England Colonies were exposed, the claims of the Dutch, Indian hostility, and attempts in England to take away their charters, all these motives led them to unite for protection. This first confederation of New England Colonies, took place in 1643. It lasted fifty years, and when broken up by the loss of their charters, the Colonists still cherished the desire for union. Nearly a century was to pass away before this desire should be fully accomplished.

The Colonies forming this union, were Massachusetts, Plymouth, Connecticut, and New Haven. Two persons were sent by each Plantation, and when assembled, they chose their president, and passed laws for the general welfare. Rhode Island, refusing to be included in the Plymouth Colony, was not admitted to the Confederation. It became necessary, therefore, for this Colony in some other way to secure the benefits which the union proposed. 1643.

The conduct of her founders towards the Indians, had always been so wise and just, that nothing was feared from that quarter; and to secure the favor of England, Roger Williams embarked for that country. He was kindly received by Sir Henry Vane, who exerted for him his influence in Parliament. That body esteemed him highly for his labors as an Indian missionary, and granted to the Rhode Island and Providence Plantations a free charter, with full "power and authority to rule themselves." 1664.

Williams joyfully returned to New England; he landed at Boston, and proceeded across the country to Providence. Reaching Seekonk, he found the Bay "covered with a fleet of canoes; all Providence had come forth to welcome the return of its bene-

What led the New England colonies to unite? — Where was the union formed, and how long did it last? — What colonies were included in this union? — How were the laws of the united colonies passed? — Why was not Rhode Island admitted? — For what object did Roger Williams go to England? — How was he received, and what did he obtain? — How welcomed on his return to Rhode Island?

factor." In their gratitude they desired to make him their governor, but he refused, and for forty years Rhode Island was without one. Its government was a Democracy, and resembled very much that of the children of Israel under the Judges.

The charters which the New England colonies obtained, were very precious to them, and there was no evil they so much dreaded as these charters being taken away. During the reign of King Charles I., this evil was often *threatened*, but providentially for these colonies, civil war in England prevented the execution of it.

1651. When Oliver Cromwell and the Puritans obtained the power in England, they wished Massachusetts to give up the old charter and accept a new one, acknowledging the right of Parliament to control their General Court. But the colonists shrewdly replied, "Times may be changed; for all things here below are subject to vanity, and other Princes or Parliaments may arise," and so they refused to surrender to their *friends* the liberty they had so manfully defended against their enemies. These were bright days of prosperity for the New England colonies. Cromwell, and his Parliament favored them in every respect: their commerce grew and flourished: they were allowed to export goods to England free of duty. Their religion, government, trade, and industry, were all left free from oppressive laws.

1660. But the ten years of Cromwell's administration passed away, and in May 1660, Charles II., whose father had been beheaded by the republicans, became king of England. "Another Prince and another Parliament" had arisen, and the Puritan colonies, trembling for their liberties, hastened to take prudent measures for securing them.

1662. From Connecticut, the younger Winthrop, son of Gov. Winthrop, of Massachusetts, was sent to England, as their agent. They could not have chosen more wisely. He was a man whose virtues so outshone his faults that the latter have

How were the charters regarded by the colonists? — By whom was the safety of the charters threatened? — What did the English Parliament desire, and how did the colonists reply? — What was their condition during Cromwell's administration? — What did they fear on the accession of Charles II.? — What measure was taken by Connecticut to preserve her liberties?

long since faded from memory, and historians present him to us as a character almost perfect. The beauty of his person, his winning manners and conversation, so influenced the king, that he granted to the Connecticut colonies an ample charter, and Winthrop returned in triumph to America. The colony showed its gratitude to Winthrop, by electing him, annually, for fourteen years, as their governor, and to this feeling towards the mother country, we may trace the fact, that almost every town within the borders of Connecticut, bears an English name. New Haven was now united with the Connecticut colony.

Rhode Island followed the wise example of Connecticut, and by the exertions of Roger Williams and Mr. Clark, obtained from King Charles II. a charter which remained in force, as the supreme law of the State, until the year 1844. 1663.

Thus were the colonies of Rhode Island and Connecticut secured in their liberties: but the Massachusetts Bay colony had been too openly befriended by Cromwell, to hope for much favor on the restoration of a Stuart king. The same vessel which brought the news of this event, brought too, among its passengers, Goffe and Whalley, two of the Judges who had sentenced King Charles I. to the block, and who fled as regicides from their country. They were not looked upon as such in New England, but were received and befriended. "The Judges' Cave" is still shown in West Rock, New Haven, where they lay concealed, on one occasion, when the king's messengers were in close pursuit of them. 1660

Charles II. was not publicly proclaimed in the Massachusetts colonies as king, until a full year after his accession to the throne; but a public address was presented to his majesty, in which they appeal to him "as a king who had seen adversity, and who, having himself been an exile, knew the hearts of exiles," "and they prayed for a continuation of their liberties." 1661.

What is said of Winthrop's character? — What was the success of his mission? — How did the colony testify her gratitude? — What success had Rhode Island in securing her charter? — Why was the charter of Massachusetts in greater danger than those of Rhode Island and Connecticut? — How were the regicides received in this colony? — How did the colony address the king?

The result of their petition was a promise that they should keep their charter, on condition that the king should be acknowledged as having a right to interfere in their domestic concerns, that justice should be administered in his name, that the church of England should be tolerated, and a few other requirements equally disagreeable to the colonists, and opposed to their charter. The terms were refused, and then the king sent over four commissioners, with full authority to settle the affairs of the colony. This caused great alarm: a day of fasting and prayer was appointed, and a firm, but loyal appeal made to the king, in which they declare the commission to be contrary to their charter, "given under the great seal" thirty years before, by which "they enjoy the privilege of *government within themselves*, as their undoubted right in the sight of God and man."

1664.

The commissioners from the king arrived, but they met with so much resistance from the colonists that nothing could be done, and at length the attempt was given up, and the conduct of the colony reported to England. The king then commanded the colonies to send deputies to England to answer for their conduct. The colonies refused, but before this act could bring them into difficulty, the only able minister of King Charles had been exiled, and an inefficient government in England left the colonists in peace.

1666.

On what conditions might they keep their charter? — Who were sent into Massachusetts by the king? — What effect had this upon the colonists? — How were the commissioners received? — What did the king next demand?

Review Questions. — Describe the character of Roger Williams. — Relate his history, to the time of his leaving Massachusetts. — What is said of the colony which he founded? — Of his mediation with the Indians? — Who founded Rhode Island? — Describe Hooker's progress to the Connecticut river, and name the earliest settlements there. — What is said of the settlement of New Haven? — Character of early settlers of Connecticut? — Relate the history of the Pequod war. — Give, briefly, the early history of Maine and New Hampshire. — Why did the colonists unite, and describe their union? — How did Rhode Island secure her charter? — What is said of these New England charters in the time of Charles I.? — Of Cromwell? — On the accession of Charles II. how did Connecticut secure her charter? — Rhode Island? — Relate the struggle of the Massachusetts Bay colonies for their charter.

CHAPTER III.

KING PHILIP'S WAR — LOSS OF MASSACHUSETTS CHARTER — SALEM WITCHCRAFT, AND KING WILLIAM'S WAR.

"The cone-roofed cabins melt away,
And pale-faced strangers bear the sway."

THERE is a beautiful English proverb which says, "God tempers the wind to the shorn lamb," and it seems to apply to the colonies during the next few years, for while they were suffering the miseries of an Indian war, their charters were left unmolested.

The Indians in New England had become fewer since the arrival of the English. There were not at this time more than thirty thousand, whilst the colonists numbered fifty-five thousand. The tribes were most numerous in the country between the western borders of Connecticut and Narragansett Bay. 1675.

As dear as was to the colonist his chartered liberty, so was the freedom of forest and hunting-ground to the Indian. And these valued possessions were fast passing out of his hands, and by treaty or purchase he saw them turned into farms and pasture-lands. The Indians were permitted to keep only narrow strips of territory. These were scattered among white settlements, that the helpless inhabitants might be more readily watched and defeated, should any hostile movement appear.

Massasoit was dead, and Philip, of Pokonoket, his son, was the most powerful Sachem of the New England tribes. He was suspected of being an enemy to the English, and was informed against. The informer was murdered, and his Indian murderers discovered, tried, and put to death. Then savage vengeance was aroused, and slept not again but with the destruction of the tribes.

Repeat the motto. — What proverb applies to the circumstances of the colonists at this time? — What was the number of Indians in New England at this time? — Where were they most numerous? — How did the Indians regard their savage freedom? — How were they restrained? — Who had succeeded Massasoit, and what of him? — What circumstances led to an Indian war?

The first hostile deed was the murder of nine men at Swanzey, in the Plymouth colony; and now were renewed all the horrors of the Pequod war, and on a much larger scale. In Connecticut the Mohegan tribes remained faithful. But in all the rest of New England, there was no spot secure. Philip's stronghold was at Mount Hope, near Bristol, in Rhode Island; driven thence, he went to rouse the Massachusetts Indians. In this unhappy colony, town after town was laid in ashes, and horrible cruelties committed.

The details of Indian warfare need not be dwelt upon. They are very horrible: but it is useful sometimes to think of the sufferings of others; and mothers in the pleasant homes of Providence, Springfield, Deerfield, and Hadley, may do well to remember the "heavy hours" of the New England women of a former generation.

The mother retired to rest, to be awakened at midnight by the dreadful Indian warwhoop, to see her children cut down before her by the tomahawk, or it may be, carried away into captivity. The family on the Sabbath, on their way to church, are startled by the bullets shot by a hidden foe from behind thickets and fences. The farmer gathering his harvests, the shepherd tending his flocks, the laborer in the fields, were alike exposed to the attacks of a cunning and cruel enemy.

Before the end of this war, twenty-five villages had been laid in ruins, and "one (white) family in every twenty, had been burned out." Still more terrible was the fate of the Indians in this struggle. No open battle-field was fought, but they were pursued in winter, to their strongholds, by captains Josiah Winslow, Church, Turner, and other soldiers of the colonies; their wigwams were burned, their families often perishing in the flames.

1676.

Many were made prisoners and sold, some wandered away and joined other tribes, and when the brave King Philip was sur-

With what hostile deed did it begin? — What colony was exempted from the horrors of this war, and why so? — Where was King Philip's stronghold? — Describe the unsafe condition of the colonists. — Mention the sufferings of both Indians and colonists in this war.

rounded in a swamp and shot, by the treachery of an Indian, he was almost the last of his tribe.

Thus ended King Philip's war. The colonists had carried it on without aid from England; they had united in helping each other, and the Irish people expressed their sympathy, by sending over a supply of provisions to the Plymouth colony.

Scarcely had the Indian war ended, when the charter struggle again commenced. The king declared that Massachusetts had no rights over the provinces of Maine and New Hampshire. Both these provinces had been granted to Sir Ferdinand Gorges and John Mason, before placing themselves under the government of the Massachusetts Bay colony; and now King Charles proposed giving them to another English nobleman. Before he had granted the charter, however, a Boston merchant, acting for the colony of Massachusetts, bought the claims of Gorges on the province of Maine, for about six thousand dollars, and thus secured it by right of purchase. 1677.

New Hampshire was not so fortunate. King Charles made it a royal province, and appointed a governor and council. The colonists, although Puritans, were required to use the Liturgy of the English Church, and to observe its fasts and festivals. These, with many acts of like tyranny, made them sigh for the days when they were united to Massachusetts, and sent representatives to the General Court. In spirit, they were still united. 1680.

The king demanded that Massachusetts should submit to laws passed in the English Parliament, oppressing the commerce of the infant colonies. The people answered, that laws passed in the Parliament of England, were not binding upon the colonies, "*they not being represented*" there. At the same time, willing to yield everything but their charter, they passed an act in their

Whose death put an end to the war, and when? — From whom had the colonists received assistance during the war? — What provinces were now to be taken away from Massachusetts? — To whom had they been granted originally? — How was Maine secured to Massachusetts? — What course was pursued towards New Hampshire? — What did the king try to impose upon Massachusetts? — What did the colonists reply?

1682. own General Court, by which they bound themselves to obey the English laws of trade. They also expressed their readiness to give up the province of Maine, because that was only held by right of purchase. They would, indeed, cheerfully give up everything, save the precious right of "government within themselves," which the charter granted. The struggle

1685. was at its height when King Charles II. died, and his brother, James II., ascended the throne. He was a Roman Catholic, and ready to oppress his own most loyal Protestant subjects in England. What could Massachusetts hope?

1686. King James II., the year after his accession, determined to take away from the several New England colonies their charters, and to make these colonies a royal province, under a governor appointed by himself. Sir Edmund Andros was chosen to carry this plan into effect, and was appointed royal governor for the province of New England.

It was on the 30th of December, sixty-six years from the landing of the Pilgrims, that Sir Edmund Andros, "glittering in scarlet and lace," arrived at the town of Boston. No very warm welcome greeted him here, but resistance was hopeless. Thus was lost the charter so dearly prized, so manfully fought for, which fifty-five years before was brought by Winthrop to America, and which, during that long period, had been, under God, the strength and hope of the colony. He was not only to rule Massachusetts, but all New England, and began at once the exercise of his authority, by demanding the charters of Rhode Island and Connec-

1687. ticut. Rhode Island obeyed. The governor then proceeded across the country to Connecticut. Fifty years before, Hooker and his little band, in humility and faith, had travelled through the unbroken forest to plant this happy colony; and now, Sir Edmund Andros, with an armed force, with pomp

How much did the colonists yield, and what were they unwilling to give up? — What event occurred in England in 1685? — Who was sent to Massachusetts to take away the charter? — When did he arrive, and how was he received? — What charters were first delivered to him? — Describe his journey to Connecticut.

and paradé, made the same journey, to take away for ever, if he might, its freedom.

But the Connecticut people were never wanting in shrewdness, and although they could not secure their liberty, they contrived to keep their charter. Sir Edmund came into their assembly, which met at Hartford, and demanded the charter. It was not presented at once, but the subject discussed until evening. Suddenly the lights were put out, and during the darkness, the charter was carried off. William Wadsworth secured it and hid it in the hollow of an old oak tree. Andros asked for the Records of the

William Wadsworth hiding the Charter.

colony, and wrote under them the Latin word "Finis," which means "the end." Having thus destroyed, as he supposed, the liberties of the colonies, he began his own harsh rule. But the day of his power was soon over.

How did this colony contrive to keep its charter?

1689. In April of the year 1689, news reached Boston, that James II. had been driven from his throne, and the Protestant sovereigns, William and Mary, were placed upon it. The messenger was arrested, but such good news could not be long kept secret. Soon, all Boston was aroused; companies marched through the streets with drums and colors, and Sir Edmund Andros was seized and thrown into prison. The General Court was once more assembled, and joy spread throughout the colonies. The charter-oak yielded its faded, but precious treasure, and the word "finis" disappeared from the records.

1688. When King William ascended the throne of England, the union of the Connecticut and Massachusetts colonies was broken up. He permitted Rhode Island and Connecticut to keep their charters, given them by King Charles II., but he would not restore that of Massachusetts. By a new charter, this colony became a royal province, with a governor appointed by the king. The first who bore rule under the new charter, was Sir William Phipps. New Hampshire was still kept separate from Massachusetts, and had also a royal governor.

The principal event during the remainder of the seventeenth century in New England, was a war carried on with the French and Indians. It began in 1689; but before considering this war, we shall relate some sad occurrences in the little town of Salem, thirteen miles north of Boston.

We hear so much about Salem witchcraft, that we are apt to imagine this little town is the only one in the world that was ever troubled by such a calamity. This is a great mistake. Many years before, and many years after the twenty persons were put to death in Salem, for witchcraft, more than one hundred and thirty thousand were executed in England, Scotland, France, and Germany, upon the same pretext.

What event destroyed Sir Edmund Andros' power? — What was done with him? — What course did King William pursue towards the New England colonies? — What change did Massachusetts undergo? — Where is Salem? — Was a belief in witchcraft general in that age?

The belief in witchcraft was this: it was supposed that if the devil could persuade any *human* being to help him, he could do a great deal to tempt and destroy mankind. It was thought that the devil appeared to some persons, and persuaded them to enter into a league with him, and become his servants. Some went so far as to say, that he caused such to sign their names in blood in a little red book, and that they promised to do his bidding, and he, in return, promised to give them power to distress or persecute any whom they chose. This league between the devil and a witch (as such a person, whether man or woman, was called) was believed to give more power for evil to both, than either would have alone.

Such a belief, strange and awful as it seems to us, was held, not only by the ignorant, but by the good, and great, and wise. Sir Matthew Hale, the Lord Chief Justice of England, the pious Richard Baxter, and the wise philosopher, Robert Boyle, all believed in it. Can we wonder then, that the forest homes of America, surrounded by savage Indians, and saddened by poverty, should be filled with the same belief and dread of the evil one's power? Or is it strange that the Mathers and Sewalls of America should err in judgment?

It was in the month of February, 1692, that Elizabeth Parris and Abigail Williams, the daughter and niece of a minister, were taken ill. When the physician came to see them, he could not tell what was the matter, and in an evil hour he said they were *bewitched*, that is, that some one in league with the devil was tormenting them. Being told to name the person, they accused an old Indian woman, named Tituba. Perhaps the children had heard Tituba singing wild Indian songs, and may have thought she had some strange power over them. Her master, Mr. Parris, treated her harshly, until, in her terror, she confessed tha she was a witch. 1692.

Soon, many other persons in the towns of Salem, Danvers, Marblehead, and Andover, declared they were bewitched, and ac-

What was the doctrine of Witchcraft? — Mention some great men in Europe who believed in it. — What event gave rise to it in Salem? — Whom did the children accuse, and why? — What was done with Tituba? — What other towns produced victims to this delusion?

cused others. A court was formed to try them. The house, where the poor witches were examined, is still to be seen in Salem, as well as the very pins with which, it is said, they tormented their victims. If, when brought into court, they confessed that they were witches, they were saved; but if the fear of God was so strong in their hearts that they would not tell a lie, even to save their lives, they were hanged. Thus, twenty persons were put to death. Dreadfully cruel as this seems to us, we must remember that the Judges really believed that these people were in league with the devil, although they would not confess it, and that if allowed to live, they would do a great deal of harm. Let us then be slow to condemn, but thank God that we live in better days.

1693. This season of error and persecution lasted nearly a year. At length, Mrs. Hale, the wife of a minister at Beverly, was accused. Her life was so pure and holy, that the most superstitious could not believe her guilty of such dreadful wickedness. They knew those who accused her must have sworn falsely. This event was, in God's providence, the means of opening the eyes of the people to the evil of the whole thing. The prison-doors were opened. The magistrates who had been engaged in this persecution, did all they could to atone for the evil that had been committed.

One good Judge felt so deeply penitent, that he ever afterwards observed one day in the year for prayer and humiliation, and "on the day of general fast, he rose in the place where he was accustomed to worship, the Old South church, in Boston, and in the presence of the congregation, handed up to the pulpit a written confession, acknowledging his error, and praying for the forgiveness of God and his people."

Witch-Hill is still pointed out to the visitor at Salem. In looking at it, let us not think of the sad errors of that Salem court, which condemned those who were hung there, but let it

What was done with the witches? — How many were put to death? — What apology can be made for this dreadful superstition? — What event put an end to it? — How many had suffered? — What is said of the penitence of those engaged it? — What evidence of true penitence was given by one of the Judges?

serve as a proof of the weakness of poor human nature, and (to use the words of Judge Story) let it remind us, "that *perfect* justice belongs to one Judgment-seat only — that which is linked to the throne of God."

When King William came to the throne of England, he was at war with Louis XIV. of France. This war soon extended to the English and French colonies in America. The French were settled all along the banks of the river St. Lawrence, and in the northern and eastern parts of Maine. In 1690, a large force of New England and New York troops undertook the conquest of Canada. The land expedition was to proceed to Montreal, by way of Lake Champlain, whilst a fleet of thirty-four vessels, furnished by Massachusetts, was to enter the St. Lawrence, and surprise Quebec. 1690.

The land forces, under Gen. Winthrop, only reached the head of Lake Champlain. There sickness, the want of provisions, and disputes among their commanders, obliged them to return.

The little fleet, commanded by Sir William Phipps, appeared before Quebec, but the French had heard of their approach, and the strong fortress was defended by a larger force than that of the assailants. Discouraged and disheartened, they retreated from the town. It was October. On the return voyage, autumn storms scattered their fleet. The expedition, from which so much had been hoped, ended only in disappointment.

Earlier in this year, however, a fleet from New England, under Sir William Phipps, had wrested Nova Scotia from the French. In conducting the war, the French called to their assistance the cruel services of the Indians. Stealing through the forests in their snow-shoes, and concealing themselves until evening, they and their inhuman allies fell upon many an unsuspecting family or village of Maine and New Hampshire, leaving behind them deso-

Repeat the words of Judge Story. — Why were the colonists exposed to French hostilities? — Describe the plan of the attack on Canada. — How far did the land forces proceed? — Relate the history of the expedition by sea. — What success had the New Englanders met with earlier in the year? — What cruel allies did the French employ? — How did they manage their attacks?

lation and death. The following is one of the sad stories of King William's war: —

One day the Indian war-whoop fell on the startled ears of Hannah Dustin and her family, in Haverhill, Massachusetts. She, with a young infant, was too ill to attempt to fly, and her husband, to save their other seven little ones, was obliged to leave her. He escaped with his little flock to a place of safety, but the Indians killed the baby, and carried Mrs. Dustin into captivity. They took also a boy and a nurse: the party were obliged to march many days through the forests, and at length reached a little island in the Merrimack river.

Hannah Dustin determined to escape. The boy whom the Indians had taken captive, was named Samuel Leonardson, and came from Worcester. He now aided Mrs. Dustin in her plans. He had learned from the Indians how to scalp, and at night, when the Indian family who guarded them were asleep, Mrs. Dustin, the nurse, and the boy, each took a tomahawk, and killing ten of the twelve Indians, made their escape to the nearest English settlement.

1697. In 1697 the war was ended, and in the peace made between the two countries, Nova Scotia was again given up to the French.

Relate the story of Hannah Dustin's capture by the Indians. — Relate the story of her escape from captivity. — When did the war close?

REVIEW QUESTIONS. — What led to King Philip's war? — Describe the sufferings occasioned by it. — How did it end? — What events in Massachusetts after King Philip's war? — Relate the loss of the charter, and the conduct of Andros. — What of the New England colonies when King William came to the throne? — Describe the belief in witchcraft, and the sufferings in Salem and other towns on account of it. — What put an end to it? — What is said of King William's war? — Describe the expedition against Canada. — How did it end? — Repeat the story of Hannah Dustin. — When was this war ended?

CHAPTER IV.

QUEEN ANNE'S WAR AND THE OLD FRENCH WAR.

"Waste are those pleasant farms, and the farmers forever departed!
* * * * * * * * * * * *
Naught but tradition remains of the beautiful village of grand Pré."

LONGFELLOW.

THE history of the 18th century in the colonies, is but the history of wars. The first of these, is Queen Anne's, so called from the sovereign then seated on the English throne. 1701.

The cruelties practised in King William's war, were repeated in this. The French, accompanied by the savage Indian, stole down from the forests of Canada and Maine, and fell upon defenceless villages, carrying into captivity and murdering the helpless inhabitants.

In February of 1704, a party of two hundred French, and one hundred and forty-two Indians, attacked the town of Deerfield, in Massachusetts. "With the aid of snow-shoes, they had walked on the crust all the way from Canada." On reaching the neighborhood, they concealed themselves in a pine forest until after midnight, when they roused, with their fearful war-whoop, the slumbering villagers: a dreadful scene ensued. The village was burned, forty-seven were killed, and one hundred and twelve carried into captivity. 1704.

Among those doomed to this "winter's march through the wilderness," was Eunice Williams, the wife of the minister of Deerfield. Even amid the horrors of that night, she had remembered her Bible, and secured it from the flames. It was now her greatest comfort. Her husband spoke with her of "the house

What is the history of the 18th century? — Name the first war of this century in the colonies. — What cruelties were practised by the Indians? — Describe the attack on Deerfield. — What befell Eunice Williams?

not made with hands, eternal in the heavens," for they knew, she being too weak for the painful march, that an Indian tomahawk would soon separate them in this world. The cruel savages put her to death, and carried her little daughter with them to Montreal. The child was then seven years of age, and refusing all entreaties for her ransom, the Indians brought her up as one of their tribe. She became the wife of an Indian chief, and many years afterwards, visited her friends in Deerfield. She wore the Indian dress, and loved the Indian life; and notwithstanding all the prayers of her Deerfield friends, "she returned to the fires of her own wigwam, and to the love of her own Mohawk children."

1710. The most important conquest made by the colonists in this war, was the capture of Port Royal, a French town, in the province of Acadia, since called Nova Scotia. This was a valuable possession for the English. As long as the French held the towns and islands and bays near the Newfoundland fishing banks, they could attack the New England fishermen, who went thither to catch cod and mackerel. On the capture of Port Royal, it was named Annapolis, or "city of Anna," in honour of the English Queen.

1713. In 1713, the mother countries made a peace, called from the place in Holland where the treaty was signed, the peace of Utrecht. By this treaty, the French agreed to yield to the English Hudson's Bay, Newfoundland, and the peninsula of Acadia. They had no intention, however, of giving up their right in the valuable cod-fisheries, and they took possession of the little rocky island of Cape Breton, and built there the strong fortress of Louisburg. In yielding Acadia too, they only gave up the peninsula. They still held the isthmus, which connects it with the main land. They built there two small forts at the head of the Bay of Fundy. The English called this peninsula Nova Scotia, and established there the towns of Annapolis and Halifax,

Whither was her child carried? — Relate the future history of this child. — What was the most important conquest of this war? — Where is Port Royal, and why was its possession important to the colonists? — To what was its name changed? — What did the French give up by the treaty of Utrecht? — What fortress did they build, and where?

but the population was still French. There were scarcely more than five or six English families in Acadia.

Thus ended Queen Anne's war. From the year 1714 to 1744, the New England colonists enjoyed peace. Towns and villages increased rapidly, and those already founded, grew in prosperity. Every little sea-side town increased the number of its vessels engaged in the cod and mackerel fisheries, and even in pursuit of the whale, which was then found in much lower latitudes than now. Manufactures were encouraged; that of linen was commenced by some Irish Presbyterians, who came over early in the century. The first American newspaper, the "Boston News Letter," had been printed, and Benjamin Franklin, in 1721, had aided an elder brother in establishing a second, called the "New England Courant." This little paper drew upon the Franklins the censure of Increase Mather, who was then living at the advanced age of four-score years. He thought they supported too strongly the doctrines of liberty of conscience, and in 1723, the paper was put down. Benjamin Franklin left Boston, and went to Philadelphia.

The peace, so favorable for the colonies, was broken in the year 1744, by another war between France and England. 1744. Before the New England people knew that war had been declared, some French, from the island of Cape Breton, surprised and destroyed an English fort in Nova Scotia. As long as the French possessed this strong-hold of Louisburg, the New England colonists felt they would never be safe from attack, and they determined to take it from them.

The brave and expert fishermen of Marblehead gladly entered into the scheme. This army of New England fishermen, mechanics, lumberers, and husbandmen, headed by William Pepperell, a merchant of Maine, sailed from Boston on this daring expedition.

How long did the New England colonies enjoy peace? — What of their prosperity during this period? — What is said of their fisheries? — Give the name of the first American newspaper. — What is said of Franklin's paper? — Why did Increase Mather oppose it? — When did war break out again? — By whom was the first attack in this war made? — Against what fortress was an expedition sent?

The famous English preacher, George Whitfield, was in New England at this time, and his eloquence made a deep impression upon the soldiers. "Nothing is to be despaired of with Christ for a leader," were the encouraging words he spoke to the little army, as they set out upon their bold enterprise. A fleet of one hundred vessels of the size then in use, bore them to the island of Cape Breton, and on the 10th of May, they came in sight of the fortress. Before reaching Cape Breton, however, they were joined by the English commodore Warren. The combined troops now numbered four thousand men.

1745.

The high wall rose before them, defended by 107 cannon, and surrounded by a ditch eighty feet wide. In the harbor was an island, also well defended by a gun-battery. The New Englanders had but twenty-one pieces, but with these they succeeded in driving the French from their batteries. In order to bring the cannon to bear upon the town, the assailants were obliged to drag them through boggy morasses: this they did with great toil and difficulty, but never despairing of success. At length, after a siege of nearly fifty days, Louisburg surrendered to this brave colonial army. They returned to Boston, and were received with transports of joy. The capture of this strong fortress from the French, was the greatest event of this war in America. It was closed by a peace, in 1748.

June 28, 1745.

This peace, however, lasted only a few years. In 1754, war again broke out in America. Early in this war, and in fact, before the Acadians were aware that hostilities existed, a colonist force appeared before the French fortresses on the Acadian Isthmus, and demanded their surrender. Unable to offer defence, the French yielded, and thus all Nova Scotia passed into the hands of the English.

1755.

The French inhabitants of Acadia were an industrious, simple-

---

Who engaged in this expedition, and by whom was it commanded? — How large a fleet had they? — Describe the position of Louisburg. — Relate the exertions of the besiegers. — How long did the siege last, and how did it end? — When did the war end? — When was war renewed in America? — What forts taken from the French in the beginning of this war? — Describe the French inhabitants of Acadia.

hearted race, loving France as their mother country, and knowing little or nothing of the laws and government of England. When, by the treaty of Utrecht, their country became an English province, they could not so readily become English subjects. They could not change their French language, religion, habits, and attachments, and they shrank from an oath of allegiance to England, which would oblige them to fight against their fellow-countrymen. Such an oath was now required of them, and their boats and fire-arms were taken from them, "under pretence" that they might rise in behalf of France, or convey provisions to the French army during the war. The Acadians quietly surrendered the means, both of escape and defence, but pleaded against taking the oath. In consequence of this unwillingness, the English king, George II., adopted the harsh measure of exterminating this peaceful colony. The execution of this order was committed to the New England soldiers, and was made yet more cruel by the suddenness and deceit used in carrying it out.

In one of the Acadian districts, for example, the fathers, husbands, and brothers, were ordered to assemble, on a certain day, in the church, to listen to a royal proclamation. Suspecting no evil, they obeyed. The doors were guarded, and they found themselves prisoners, brought there to listen to an order from the English king, which was to banish them forever from their country. Not allowed to return to their homes, they were carried, guarded, to the sea-shore, and there joined by their wives and children.

It was autumn when this cruel work began, and December came before it was entirely finished. In the confusion of embarking, families were separated, and the vessels bore members of the same household to different colonies. The advertisements in the colonial newspapers told, for a long time, of many a bereaved and sorrowing heart. Seven thousand of these suffering people were

Why could they not readily become English subjects? — What was required of them? — To what did they object, and what did they yield? — What was done with them? — How was the cruelty of this order increased? — What example is given of the cruelties committed? — Describe the scene of their embarkation.

distributed among the colonies, from Maine to Georgia. To prevent every hope of return, their homesteads were burned, their fields and orchards laid waste, their homes utterly desolated.

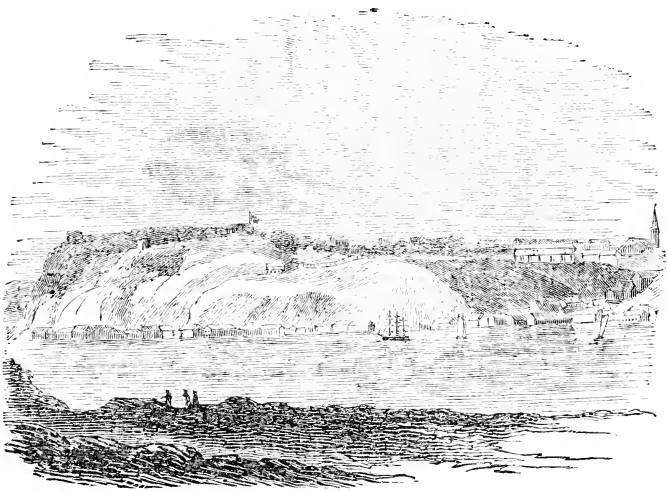
During this French and Indian war, bodies of New England troops distinguished themselves by various brave exploits, and among the volunteers we find Israel Putnam, Seth Pomeroy, John Stark, and other names, afterwards well known in the war of Independence. On one occasion, during a skirmish near Lake George, Putnam was captured by the Indians, tied to a forest tree, and fire was kindled around him. From this fearful peril he was rescued by a French officer and carried into captivity, but exchanged for some French prisoners, a few months afterwards.

Very little was gained by the English in America during the first few years of the war, owing to the activity of the French, and the want of skill on the part of the English officers who were sent to command in America. At length, in the year 1757, William Pitt, a wise and able statesman, was placed at the head of affairs in England. By his just regard for the colonies, he won their affection, and they cordially united in aiding his plans for the conquest of the French possessions in America. One of the expeditions resolved on, was the capture of Quebec, a strongly fortified town on the St. Lawrence, in Lower Canada.

1759. This enterprise was full of difficulties: the navigation of the river was unsafe. The northern bank, for thirteen miles, was defended by cannon, batteries, armed boats, and entrenchments: the watchful and practised eye of the Indian guarded against surprises, and the citadel of Quebec itself, although defended only by a small number of men, was one of the strongest fortresses in the world. But the enterprise was undertaken by the brave General Wolfe. For two months, his fleet and army occupied Point Levi, the southern bank of the St. Lawrence, watching

Where were they distributed? — How was their return prevented? — What soldiers distinguished themselves in this war? — Relate the danger and escape of Putnam. — Why were the English unsuccessful during the first years of this war? — How did Pitt treat the colonies? — What great expedition was planned? — Describe its difficulties. — Who commanded this expedition? — How, and where, were the first two months spent?

in vain for an opportunity of surprising the French. In the meantime his army was not idle: the cannon destroyed the lower town, and a daring but unsuccessful attack was made on the French entrenchments. The capture of the town, however, seemed hopeless, as long as no nearer point of attack could be found.



View of Quebec.

At length Wolfe discovered a little cove just above the city, from which a steep, and narrow path led up to the heights of Abraham. This was the name given to a high plain, stretching north from the town. He saw that these heights were but slenderly guarded, and knew that if he could only get a sufficient number of men up that steep path, he could make himself master of the town. It was a desperate attempt, but he determined to make it. He sent Captain Cook (afterwards the celebrated navigator) with some ships, below the town, to deceive the French, by pretending that an attack was intended at that point.

What discovery encouraged Wolfe to attempt the attack on Quebec?—How did he divert the attention of the French from his designs?

Then on the night of the 12th September, in boats with muffled oars, they rowed quietly up the river. "As he passed from ship to ship, he spoke to those in the boat with him, of the poet Gray," whose "Elegy in a Country Churchyard," had just been published; "I," said he, "would prefer being the author of that poem, to the glory of beating the French to-morrow;" and while the oars struck the river, as it rippled in the silence of the night air, under the flowing tide, he repeated:*

> "The boast of heraldry, the pomp of power,
> And all that beauty, all that wealth e'er gave,
> Await alike the inevitable hour;
> The paths of glory lead but to the grave."

The boats arrived safely at the cove, the men sprang ashore, and aided by the roots and boughs of trees, clambered up the steep, and by day-break, were assembled on the heights of Abraham.

1759. Sept. 13th. General Montcalm, the French commander, could scarcely credit his senses, when he found the English had gained this favorable position. Hastily his army was mustered, and by ten o'clock, the battle was begun. The English won it, but with the loss of the brave General Wolfe: he died in the moment of victory. Hearing the shouts, "They fly! they fly!" he asked, "Who fly?" "The French," was the answer. "Now God be praised," exclaimed the dying soldier, "I die happy." General Montcalm was also mortally wounded, and when told that he could live but a few hours, replied, "So much the better; I shall not live to see the surrender of Quebec."

This important conquest did much towards finishing the war.

1760. The following year George III. ascended the throne of England, and in 1763 the peace of Paris was signed. By this treaty, France gave up to England nearly all her possessions in America, and thus, gloriously for the English, ended

When and how was the attempt made?—Of what poem did Wolfe speak?—Repeat the lines he quoted.—Who commanded the French.—What was the result of the battle?—Repeat the dying words of both Generals.—When was peace made?—What did England gain by this peace?

* Bancroft.

"the old French War," or the French and Indian war, as it is sometimes called.

Now that we have brought the history of New England nearly to the time when it united with the other colonies in the war of Independence, let us glance at its general progress up to that time.

1st. In religion and morality. The exclusive and unkind spirit which had marked some of the early Puritans, had passed away: they had grown in "love one towards another." The old South Church was built in 1669, and before the Revolution there were eight or ten religious societies in the town of Boston alone, and among them, Quakers and Baptists. King's Chapel, the first Episcopal Church, was built in 1686. Much regard was paid to a learned and pious ministry; and in the early days of Connecticut, it was said, that every town within its limits "had a scholar to its minister." Laws concerning the moral conduct of the people were very strict throughout New England, and persons were often punished in those days, for that which now would be considered as no offence. No man was allowed to keep a tavern, who was not highly respected in the community, and the owner of property. The names of those who were reputed drunkards were posted up in the ale-houses, and the keeper forbidden to sell them liquor. An old English writer says of New England, "As Ireland will not brook venomous beasts, so will not that land vile livers."

2d. In education and knowledge. Near the New England Church, invariably stood the common school. The colleges also were well cared for: from the first, Harvard had been the pride of New England. Sometimes the value of a bushel of corn was

---

How had the religious spirit of the Puritans improved?—Prior to the War of Independence, how many religious societies were there in Boston?—What churches had been built, and when? — What is said of the ministers in Connecticut?—What is said of the tavern-keepers of New England?—How were the drunkards treated? — How was Harvard College regarded in New England?

sent as a present, and the income of a ferry was bestowed for its support. It had friends, too, in England. Archbishop Usher, and the good Richard Baxter, sent out valuable donations of books. And it well repaid their care, by sending forth some of the most distinguished men of our country.

Yale, too, had arisen amid the beautiful elms of New Haven. This institution owes its birth to ten worthy farmers, who, in 1700, assembled at Branford, and each one, laying a few volumes on the table, said: "I give these books for the founding of a College in this colony."* New Haven was the place afterwards chosen for its location, and it was called Yale, in honor of Elihu Yale, a gentleman who gave a large sum of money for its support. Bishop Berkeley also made to this college a noble contribution of one thousand volumes and the rent of a farm; Sir Isaac Newton, the celebrated astronomer, Sir R. Steele, and others, contributed 800 volumes, which were sent out by the colonial agent. When Yale was founded, there were but twenty-eight towns in Connecticut, and the colony was not known to the best English geographers.

The art of printing had been brought to Boston, but very few books were allowed to be printed in the colonies. In 1704, appeared the first newspaper, called the "Boston News-Letter." This was two years before the birth of Benjamin Franklin. The first paper-mill erected in Massachusetts was established in 1728, and engaged, after the third year of its operation, to turn out five hundred reams yearly.

Mines of iron-ore had been discovered as early as 1712, on the western borders of Connecticut; and an iron furnace was built in the neighborhood of Salisbury, as early as 1740.

As early as 1690, the fisheries of Nantucket were established,

---

Name the friends of the college in England, and what they did for it. — When was Yale planted, and to whom does it owe its origin? — After whom was it named, and what celebrated men befriended it? — What is said of Connecticut at this time? — When was the first newspaper, and when the first paper-mill, established in the colony? — What mineral ore was discovered in Connecticut, and when? — Where was an iron furnace established? — What towns in Massachusetts were early engaged in the fisheries?

* Bancroft.

and when the Revolutionary war broke out, Nantucket had one hundred and fifty vessels and twenty-two hundred men, engaged in whaling voyages. In 1766, Marblehead had forty vessels employed in the foreign fishing trade.

New England agriculture differed greatly from that to which the colonists had been accustomed in England. They were unused to the long winters of their new country: the soil was more rugged, and the productions were many of them new. The maize, or Indian corn, the golden squash, and pumpkin, articles of food now so well known, not only in our own but in other lands, were then strange dishes, borrowed from their Indian neighbors. By degrees, however, these articles took the place of more familiar vegetables in the gardens and on the tables of the Puritans. The potato, a native of South America, was introduced into New Hampshire in 1719, but they were rare in the colonies as late as 1740.

The following is the list of dishes at a New England dinner, given on the 22d December, 1769; being the first celebration of the landing of the Pilgrim Fathers. The dinner hour was at half-past 2 o'clock: the dishes, "one baked whortleberry pudding, two dishes of succatash, clams, oysters, and cod-fish; venison, roasted by the first jack brought to the colony, sea-fowl, frost-fish, and eels; an apple pie, a course of cranberry tarts, and cheese made in the old colony."

How many vessels and men did Nantucket employ? — What difficulties did the New Englanders meet with as farmers? — What vegetables were new to them? — When were potatoes brought to New England? — Repeat the bill of fare of a New England public dinner, in 1769.

REVIEW QUESTIONS. — Describe the attack on Deerfield, and relate the story of Eunice Williams. — What conquests made by the colonists during Queen Anne's war? — What were the terms of the treaty of Utrecht? — What can you say of New England between the years 1714 and 1744? — Describe the expedition to Louisburg. — The attack on the town, and its results.

Relate the history of the Acadians. — What colonial officers distinguished themselves during the old French war? — Relate the history of the attack on Quebec. — When, and by what, was the war ended? — What is said of the religion and morality of the colonies at the period of the Revolution? — What of their progress in education? — What of their fisheries? — Their agriculture?

CHAPTER V.

MIDDLE STATES.

"Great God! we thank thee for this home—
This bounteous birth-land of the free;
Where wanderers from afar may come,
And breathe the air of liberty!"

PABODIE.

AT the time of the early settlement of America, Europe was in a very sad and unhappy condition. Nearly all the nations were at war with each other, and it is painful to think, that some of these wars were on account of differences in religion; — the Roman Catholic sovereigns warring with, or persecuting their Protestant subjects, and, what was worse, Protestants at times persecuting each other. During one of the wars of Louis XIV., his General Turenne, looking from a church-tower in the Palatinate, saw thirty towns and villages in flames, and the wretched inhabitants flying in terror.

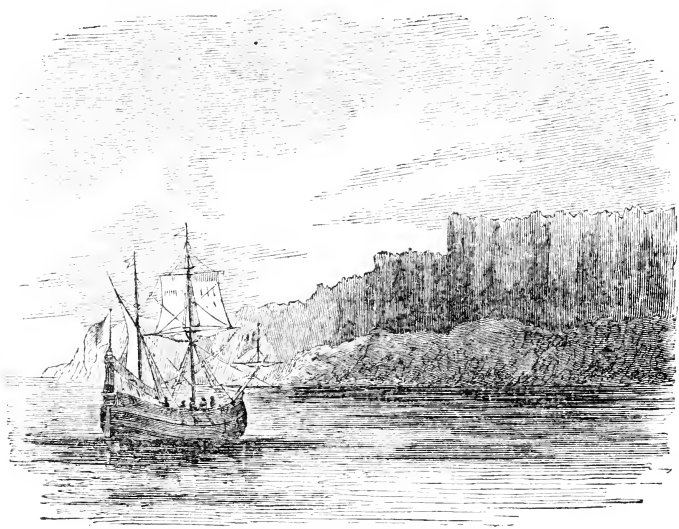
17th century.

The wars of this monarch, carried misery into all the countries of Europe. Hundreds, to escape these horrors, fled from the shores of the Baltic, and the banks of the Danube and the Rhine, and with the persecuted English Quaker, and French Huguenot, found a refuge on the peaceful banks of the Hudson and the Delaware. It is pleasant to think that amid such times of violence and wrong in Europe, our own beautiful country offered a home to the outcast, and to those "persecuted for conscience' sake."

1609. Henry Hudson, an English navigator, was sent out by a company of Dutch merchants, to seek a north-west passage to India.

Describe the condition of Europe at the time of the early settlements in America. — What wars were then raging? — What induced numbers to leave Europe?—From what parts of Europe did they come?—Where did they find a refuge in America?—When did Henry Hudson first visit New York?

Whilst exploring the eastern coast of America for this object, in September 1609, he passed through the Narrows, and entered what is now called the Bay of New York.



Hendrick Hudson sailing up the River Hudson.

1609. He sailed up the river which now bears his name; his little ship the "Half-moon," being the first European sail ever borne upon its waters. The Indian in his birch canoe came with wonder and admiration, to welcome the daring stranger. On the banks of this beautiful river, now so full of life, and studded with fair towns and villages, Hudson found only an unbroken forest. He sailed as far as the place where Albany now stands. In October he returned to Europe, and described the land he had discovered as "the most beautiful" in the world.

Describe his voyage up the Hudson.—What did he report of the country in Europe?

No regular attempt at settlement was made until fifteen years after. In 1624, the Dutch purchased from the Indians, the "island of Manhattan," consisting of twenty-two thousand acres, for *twenty-four dollars*. It was called New Amsterdam, and contained a few Dutch cottages, with straw roofs and wooden chimneys. It is now the large and wealthy city of New York.

All the country claimed by the Dutch was called New Netherlands. To encourage people to settle, the government promised, that whoever, within four years, would plant there a colony of fifty souls, should possess a tract of land sixteen miles in length, and as wide as they required, with the right of governing all who settled upon it. These owners were called patroons, or Lords of
1630. the Manor. The little colonies thus planted along the banks of the Hudson, were not very prosperous; their land was claimed by their English neighbors on the East, and by the Swedes, who had settled on Delaware river on the South. Their third governor brought a still worse evil upon them, by involving them in an Indian war.

1643. The Dutch had excited the evil passions of the savages by selling them liquor; and had robbed and ill-treated them until they were roused to revenge. The son of an Indian chief had slain a Hollander, and Governor Kieft demanded that the murderer should be given up. This the river-chieftains refused; but before the matter was settled, a fiercer tribe dwelling near Albany threatened war on the Indians of Manhattan, and the latter came in terror to beg the protection of the Dutch. Governor Kieft, taking advantage of their helpless condition, ordered a general massacre. But "the wickedness of the wicked is visited upon their own head." Every Indian sought revenge in midnight surprise and murder; not a village or "bowery" was safe, and many of the colonists fled to Holland. For two years this dreadful war lasted; then both parties tired of the miseries

When and for how much money was Manhattan island purchased?—Describe the early appearance of the settlement made upon it.—What was the country named?—What inducements were offered to settlers?—Why did not the early Dutch settlements prosper?—What brought on an Indian war, and when did it occur?—Describe its miseries.

which it brought, concluded a peace. The cruel Governor Kieft was sent home, but the vessel in which he sailed, was wrecked on the coast of Wales, and the guilty man perished in the waters.

The time of greatest prosperity to the Dutch settlements on the Hudson, was during the early days of Governor Stuyvesant, who succeeded Governor Kieft. Stuyvesant preserved peace with the Indians; gained by conquest, the Swedish settlements on the Delaware; and encouraged commerce, agriculture and building, so that, in a few years, New Amsterdam could almost rival Boston. "New York was always a city of the world." Even in these early days its settlers consisted of the persecuted Protestants of Europe. The Huguenots of France, Waldenses of Italy, the Calvinists of Switzerland, Bohemia and the Rhine, and the afflicted Jew, all, were welcomed to a free and happy home in the little island of Manhattan. 1650.

Many New Englanders had settled among the Dutch, and had even planted whole towns in New Netherlands. They brought with them the real New England love of government within themselves;" and this desire, increased too by the unwise oppressions of the Dutch government in Holland, was fully shared by the inhabitants on the Hudson. Governor Stuyvesant refused the people any share in the government, nor did he see the folly of this refusal until an English fleet was within the harbor, demanding the surrender of the town. 1664.

The King of England, Charles II., had granted the province of New Netherlands to his brother the Duke of York, who had sent out this fleet under Colonel Nichols to secure his new colony. When the ships arrived in the bay, the people of New Amsterdam, hoping to enjoy more freedom under English rule, determined to surrender their town. Governor Stuyvesant held out as long as he could, and refused to sign the articles of surrender, until the place was actually in the enemy's hands. Thus in 1664, New

How, and when, was the war ended? — What became of Governor Kieft? — What did Governor Stuyvesant do for the Dutch settlements on the Hudson? — Describe the population of New Netherlands. — Into whose hands did the Dutch settlements fall in 1664? — What induced the Dutch to give up their town?

Netherlands became an English province. The name of New Amsterdam was changed to New York, in honor of the king's brother the Duke of York; and the name of Albany was given to the little settlement on the Hudson, which the Dutch had called Fort Orange.

1664. to 1674. The inhabitants of New York were very much disappointed on finding their change of government did not bring with it the blessings they had hoped. King Charles II. was as little disposed to let them make their own laws, and have their own assemblies, as the Dutch government had been. So strong was the feeling of disappointment, that nine years after, when Holland was successful against England, and a Dutch fleet appeared in New York harbor, the inhabitants again gave up their town to its former masters. They called it New Orange, in honor of a celebrated Dutch patriot, William Prince of Orange. This state of things, however, lasted but fifteen months. In 1674, New York was restored to the English, and remained in their possession until the time of the Revolution.

The English governors of New York oppressed the people, and it was not until 1683, that (acting under the advice of the good William Penn), the Duke of York, who owned the province, permitted them to hold a free assembly, in which they might make their own laws. When the Duke of York became king, he tried to take away this privilege, but the people had drawn up their "charter of liberties," and, like the New Englanders, were resolved to defend it.

1690. By the end of the first century of their settlement, the inhabitants of New York had planted villages along the banks of the Hudson, and made a few settlements on the Mohawk; but west of Schenectady, the country was a wilderness, occupied by the Iroquois race of Indians. The Onondagas, Cayugas, Mo-

What did the English name it? — Were the Dutch people of New York satisfied with the change of rulers? — How did they show their feelings a few years after? — When and how was this state of affairs changed? — How did the English governors rule New York? — When were they permitted to hold their own assembly, and what did they do? — With what Indian tribes did the colonists form alliances?

hawks, Oneidas, and Senecas, belonged to this race. In 1713, they were joined by the Tuscaroras, making a confederacy, usually known as "the Six Nations." The English were enabled to obtain the friendship of these tribes. In the good providence of God, the Six Nations thus became the powerful protectors of the English against the hostilities of the French in Canada, and the St. Regis and St. Francis Indians, in the northern part of the State.

Still, during the French and Indian wars, cruel deeds were committed in New York. In 1690, a party of French and Indians fell, at midnight, upon the defenceless and unsuspecting village of Schenectady. Sixty of the inhabitants were massacred, and others fled, half clad, through the winter-cold of that dreadful night to Albany. Many perished before they could reach a place of safety.

At the close of King William's war, the Earl of Bellamont was sent from England to govern New York. He endeavored to put down piracy, which, at that time, was disturbing commerce on every ocean. For this purpose, he sent out a brave and bold seaman, Captain William Kidd, with orders to capture all vessels he might meet with engaged as pirates. Kidd, being a man of no principle, was tempted, by hopes of plunder, to turn pirate himself. He became as daring and reckless as those whom he was sent to punish. By robbing merchant vessels, and murdering the crews, he is said to have obtained large sums of gold and treasures. Much of this he is reported to have buried on Long Island, and in other parts of the country. At the end of a few years, this daring pirate was seized, and sent to England, where he suffered death for his crimes. 1698.

On the approach of the old French war, which, it will be remembered, grew out of the disputes between France and England concerning their possessions in America, a Congress assembled at Albany. There representatives met, from every colony north of the Potomac; chiefs from the Six Nations came 1754.

Of what advantage was the friendship of these Indians? — Describe the attack on Schenectady, and tell when it occurred. — What did Earl Bellamont endeavor to put down? — Relate the history of Captain Kidd. — Where was a Congress assembled in 1754?

also. At this Congress, Benjamin Franklin presented a plan of an American Union, and Hendrick, the great Mohawk warrior, urged its acceptance, in the poetical language of the Indian: "We thank you," said he, "for renewing and brightening the covenant chain. We will take this belt to Onondaga, where our council-fire always burns, and keep it so securely, that neither the thunderbolt nor the lightning shall break it. Strengthen yourselves, and bring as many as you can into this covenant chain." This plan of union was not carried out then, but the idea thus born was kept alive in the hearts of the American people, and Franklin lived to hear his country called "The *United* States of America."

1755. During the "old French war," the settlements and forts in New York suffered terribly. Oswego, on the south-eastern shore of Lake Ontario, was taken by an army of French and Indians, under Montcalm. Often the beautiful waters of Lakes Champlain and George were stained with blood, and the quiet of their hills made to re-echo the war-whoop of the savage. For the first four years of the contest, the French, under their daring General Montcalm, were successful: they captured from the English, Forts Crown Point and Ticonderoga, on Lake Champlain, and many other places; but when, in 1759, Mr. Pitt came to be at the head of affairs, and had the planning of the American war, the tide of conquest turned. The English General Amherst occupied Crown Point; Niagara was retaken; and after the fall

1763. of Quebec, the peace of Paris was made, which restored to the English all the country in America for which France had been contending.

The history of New York, after the French war, is only the history of a struggle between the royal governors and the people. The governors gave the colonists as few privileges as possible, and the colonists resisted and petitioned against their injustice: things were in this state, when, in 1765, parliament passed the Stamp Act.

Who came to it, and what was proposed to them? — Repeat the words of the Mohawk chieftain. — Name some of the places which were attacked in New York during the old French war? — When did this war end? — What is the history of New York from this time to the passage of the Stamp Act?

NEW JERSEY.

THE country south of the Hudson was visited by the Dutch, as early as the year 1623, and formed a portion of their province of New Netherlands. When, in 1664, this province fell into the hands of the English, it was divided into two parts, and given to Lords Berkeley and Carteret. It was named New Jersey, in honor of Carteret, who had been governor of the little island of Jersey, in the English channel. Elizabethtown, which then consisted of a "cluster of four houses," was named after Lady Elizabeth Carteret, and became the capital of the province. Newark was settled by New England Puritans, who, as well as the Dutch, founded towns and villages on Raritan River and Bay. At Perth-Amboy, was the beautiful residence of the governor.

At the end of ten years, Lord Berkeley sold his share of the province, West New Jersey, to the Friends, a large number of whom emigrated from England the next year. The spot where they landed, they named Salem, for it seemed to them a haven of peace from the persecutions they had suffered in the old world. During the following years, large numbers of Friends came to this new province: they purchased lands of the Indians, who, gathering around them, "under the shades of the Burlington forests," thus expressed their kind welcome and desire of peace:— 1674.

"You are brothers," said the Sachems, "and we will live like brothers with you. We will have a broad path for you and us to walk in. If an Englishman fall asleep in this path, the Indian shall pass him by and say: 'He is an Englishman; he is asleep; let him alone.' The path shall be plain; there shall not be in it a stump to hurt the feet." This happily founded province enjoyed for many years a wise and good government. 1678.

By whom was New Jersey first visited? — When did it fall into possession of the English? — To whom was it then given, and how was it divided? — After whom was New Jersey, and after whom was Elizabethtown, named? — What other settlements were made in New Jersey? — Into whose hands did West New Jersey fall in 1674? — How did these people treat the Indians? — Describe the interview between them.

1682. East New Jersey also fell into possession of the Friends, being purchased in 1682 by twelve of that Society. Its population, however, consisted chiefly of New England Puritans, and Scotch Presbyterians; the latter fleeing in large numbers from persecution in their own country. This was a religious persecution, carried on against them by Kings Charles and James II., because the Scotch refused to receive Episcopacy as their form of religion. The Presbyterians of Scotland were hunted, tortured, and executed; some were banished, and large numbers fled into exile. During these years of suffering, East Jersey received thousands of these banished people.

Here they found a peaceful and happy home. "Peaches and vines grew wild on the river-sides; the woods were crimsoned with strawberries; and 'brave oysters' abounded along the shores."* They established free schools, and were an industrious people. In a few years, one of their number could say, that in all the borders of the colony, "there is not a poor body, or one that wants."

1702. These happy days of New Jersey lasted until the year 1702, when the Quaker proprietors gave up their rights to the crown, and Queen Anne united the two provinces into one, and sent over a royal governor, Lord Cornbury, to rule it.

From this time, until the War of Independence, there is little of interest in the history of New Jersey.

When was East Jersey purchased by the Friends? — Describe its population. — What led the Scotch Presbyterians to New Jersey? — Describe the products of New Jersey, and the prosperity of the colony. — When did New Jersey become a Royal province?

REVIEW QUESTIONS. — Describe the state of Europe at the opening of the 17th century. — Where did the oppressed find refuge? — Relate Hudson's discovery of New York. — What difficulties and hostilities did the early Dutch settlers encounter? — What is said of New York under Stuyvesant's administration? — When did New York pass into the hands of the English, and what of their government? — What of New York during the French and Indian wars? — What of the Congress at Albany, in 1754? — What of New York during the old French war?

By whom was New Jersey first claimed? — Into whose possession did it fall in 1664, and what can you say of its early settlement? — How were the Indians treated by the Friends? — What other settlers came to New Jersey? — What is said of the prosperity of the colony? — When did it become a Royal province?

* Bancroft.

CHAPTER VI.

PENNSYLVANIA AND DELAWARE.

"The only treaty framed in Christian love,
Without a single oath."

BERNARD BARTON.

PENNSYLVANIA was intended, from the first, to be an asylum for the persecuted English Friends.

The Friends or Quakers, as they are frequently called, were the followers of George Fox, and founded their first Society in England, about the year 1650. Believing that a "divine light" is granted to every being, George Fox taught that "all human interference in matters of religion" was wrong, and boldly proclaimed that "God was come to teach His people Himself." Regarding religious worship as purely spiritual, they would have no humanly ordained ministry, and gave up the Rites of Baptism and the Lord's Supper. They practised the utmost simplicity in dress and language, avoiding, as much as possible, the use of titles, and generally addressing others by the appellation of Friend. 1650.

Their firmness in holding these practices, brought upon them persecution, even to imprisonment and torture, until God raised up for them a deliverer in William Penn, and a home in his colony of Pennsylvania.

William Penn was the only son of an English admiral. When a student at Oxford, at the early age of seventeen, he became interested in the doctrines of the Society of Friends. This displeased

For what was Pennsylvania intended? — Who were the Friends or Quakers? — What were their doctrines on the subject of religious worship? — Mention some of their practices. — What were they called to suffer, and who was raised up as a deliverer? — Who was William Penn? — Where was he educated, and in what did he become interested?

his father, who treated him severely, but afterwards forgave him, and sent him to travel on the continent of Europe. He remained abroad two years, and then returned to London, with a mind improved by study and travel. There he became a student of law, at Lincoln's Inn. He was in London during the time of the dreadful plague of 1665, and his benevolent heart suffered much in sympathy with the distress around him.

1666. William Penn was at this time twenty-two years of age: he was handsome, gay, accomplished, and possessed a mind well stored with the learning of France and England. His father was high in favor at court. Possessing such brilliant worldly prospects, William Penn yet sought for "that peace which the world cannot give." In Ireland, whither he had been sent on business by his father, he went to Friends' meeting, and there became so impressed by the preaching of Thomas Loe, the Quaker minister, that he made his Christian profession as a member of that Society.

1668 to 1678. This step led to much suffering. His father turned him out of doors, and it was a mother's love only that saved him from severe poverty. The firmness and gentleness of William Penn afterwards, gained for him the admiration and entire forgiveness of his father. During the following three years, Penn was three times thrown into prison on account of his religion. On his release from imprisonment, he travelled again in Europe, visiting Holland and Germany, distributing tracts, and preaching to the people. Returning to England, he found the condition of the Friends as suffering as ever, and being unable to save them from persecution, and seeing no hope for them in England, he determined to try "the Holy Experiment," as he calls it, of founding a free and happy home for them in the New World.

William Penn's father had died some years before, leaving

How did his father treat him at first? — What effect had his travels upon William Penn? — At what period was he in London, and how engaged? — Describe Penn's appearance and prospects at this time. — What circumstance led to his becoming a Friend? — Relate his sufferings on this account? — Where, and for what purpose, did Penn determine to plant a colony?

to his son a claim on the government for sixteen thousand pounds. William Penn now petitioned the king to 1681.
pay him this debt, not in money, but by granting him a tract of land on the western bank of the Delaware river. This petition was granted, and Penn gave to his new plantation the name of Pennsylvania, or the woods of Penn, in honor of his father the Admiral. He was soon the owner and governor of a large colony. He determined, however, by the grace of God, not to abuse his power, but to rule his people, or rather, help them to rule themselves, in the fear of the Lord.

The year before Penn himself was able to join the colony, he sent out a number of emigrants, and with them a description of the town which he would have them found. He had no love for crowded cities, shutting out the pure air and light of heaven; and believing with the poet, that

"God made the country, and man made the town,"

he determined that his Philadelphia, his "City of Brotherly Love," should be a "faire greene country towne." His instructions were not very faithfully carried out then, and by succeeding generations they have been almost wholly unheeded. And yet, Washington, Franklin, Logan, Rittenhouse, and Penn Squares, may serve to keep fresh in our memories the benevolent design of the good Quaker of Philadelphia.

In November, of the year 1682, Penn himself came to 1682.
America, in the ship "Welcome." He was warmly greeted at Chester, by the Friends from the north of England, who had preceded him. With a few companions, he is said to have visited the spot where Philadelphia now stands, and there, late in the autumn, he made his famous treaty with the Indians. They met under the large elm tree at Shackamaxon, and beneath its shadow made their first covenant, simple in words, and yet stronger in deed and in truth, than many confirmed by an oath.

For what did William Penn apply in 1681, and with what success? — What did he name his colony, and how did he desire to rule it? — What directions did he send for the founding of a town in the colony? — What still exists in Philadelphia to remind one of William Penn? — When did William Penn come to Pennsylvania? — Where did he meet the Indians?

Penn's Treaty with the Indians.

"We meet," said William Penn, "on the broad pathway of good faith, and good will; I will not call you children, for parents sometimes chide their children too severely; nor brothers only; for brothers differ. The friendship between me and you I will not compare to a chain; for that the rains might rust, or the falling tree might break. We are the same as if one man's body were to be divided into two parts; we are all one flesh and blood."

Repeat his words to them.

And the Indians replied: "We will live in love with William Penn and his children, as long as the moon and the sun shall endure." Such was the treaty of peace between the English Friend and the red man of the forest, and "not a drop of Quaker blood was ever shed by an Indian."

Early in 1683, the city of Philadelphia was marked out on the neck of land between the Delaware and the Schuylkill. Penn purchased the land from the Swedes, who for more than forty years had held a few settlements on the banks of the Delaware. In March, there assembled on this spot, a little Congress of representatives of the people whom Penn governed, to draw up a charter of liberties. This was ninety-three years before representatives from all the colonies met in the same city, to sign and proclaim the Declaration of Independence. In the summer of 1683, there were but four cottages in Philadelphia; the deer and the rabbit were bounding where now are its most crowded streets. A few rods from the Delaware, stretched a dark forest. At the end of two years, there were six hundred houses, several schools, and a printing establishment. 1683.

Some difficulties arose between William Penn and Lord Baltimore, the proprietary of Maryland, concerning the boundaries of their provinces. No very serious quarrel grew out of them, but the boundary remained unsettled until the year 1761, when Messrs. Mason and Dixon drew their famous line, which is now regarded as dividing the slave-holding States from the non-slave-holding, or northern States.

In 1684, Penn returned to England, leaving his colony in a flourishing condition. There he remained fifteen years. At times he was in favor at Court, and pleaded with such success for his brethren, that King James II. released twelve hundred of 1684.

What did the Indians reply? — Of whom else did Penn purchase the land on which Philadelphia was founded? — How long had the Swedes' settlements existed on the Delaware? — When was Philadelphia marked out? — What assembled there the following year? — What is said of the rapid progress of Philadelphia in two years? — What difficulties occurred between Penn and Lord Baltimore? — When were these difficulties finally settled? — When did Penn return to England, and how was he occupied there?

them from prison. He was, on the accession of King William III., three times arrested and brought to trial. At length, after many delays, and much sorrow and suffering, he again visited Pennsylvania. For a short time, during his absence, Penn's colony had been subjected to a royal governor; but he had found little comfort in trying to rule a people so bent on ruling themselves, and at the end of two years had returned to England.

Although William Penn was the sole proprietor of his province, he left the government entirely to the people, so that the colony of Pennsylvania was a democracy. The people supported the governor; the people elected many of the officers, and in their assembly they made their own laws. There were no forts; no army, and a for a long time no militia.

1701. Penn returned to England, never again to revisit the colony he had so happily planted; but his heart and his prayers were still with it, and it prospered greatly.

1723. In 1723, little more than twenty years after Penn's last visit, there landed in the city of Philadelphia, a poor, weary, hungry boy: he came in a row-boat from Burlington, but had walked thither nearly all the distance from New York. He was a runaway apprentice from Boston, and was now seeking employment for bread. He found it in a printing-office: honest, industrious, and talented, he soon set up for himself, and was chosen by the Assembly of Pennsylvania, to be their printer. Soon, he became the owner and editor of a paper, and its articles on the necessity of union against all enemies, stirred the spirit of many an American patriot. He became a philosopher, celebrated for his discoveries in electricity, and the invention of the lightning-rod. He was a patriot, and was sent by the colonies to plead their cause in England. He became a statesman, and before his death, the poor printer's boy stood in the courts of kings, there to

What happened in Pennsylvania during his absence? — How was Pennsylvania ruled? — When did Penn finally return to England? — Who landed in Philadelphia in 1723, and where did he come from? — What business did he engage in, and with what success? — What is said of his newspaper? — What is said of him as a philosopher, and as a patriot? — What privilege did he enjoy before his death?

proclaim and defend those principles of freedom, which had been in his heart ever since he had helped his brother to print the "New England Courant." Need it be said that this is the story of Dr. Benjamin Franklin?

By the year 1747, the Indians on the western borders of Pennsylvania had become so hostile, that it was found necessary to raise an armed force. By the advice of Franklin, about one hundred and twenty companies of militia were raised, of which, Philadelphia provided ten companies, each containing one hundred men. These hostile Indians were not the tribes with whom Penn had made his treaty, but others, with whom the early Quaker settlers had never met. 1747.

The Friends felt that their measures for self-defence were proper, but during the French and Indian wars, their colony was less troubled than any other in America. During the "old French war," the Delawares ravaged the villages on the Lehigh river, and threatened the whole colony. A band of three hundred armed men, conducted by the brave Captain Hugh Mercer, surprised the Indians, near their village of Kittaning. Raising a dreadful war-whoop, they fled to the village, set it on fire, and perished amid the flames of their own wigwams, to escape being made prisoners by the English.

DELAWARE.

Between the years 1623 and 1631, the Dutch visited Delaware Bay, and during the latter year, a feeble settlement was planted near the present site of Lewistown. The Dutch, however, were not to be the settlers of this little colony. In the year 1626, the brave Gustavus Adolphus, King of Sweden, determined to

Who was this person? — What preparations were made to repel the hostilities of the Indians? — Who were those hostile Indians? — What occurred at Kittaning during the "old French war? — By whom was Delaware first visited? — What king formed the design of planting a colony there?

send some of his subjects from the wars and tumults of their own country, to found a peaceful colony in America. He fell on the battle-field of Lutzen, before his plan could be carried out. When his little daughter Christiana succeeded to the throne, her wise and good minister, Oxenstiern, accomplished the noble purpose which Gustavus had formed. In 1638, he sent out a
1638. little colony of fifty men to Delaware Bay. They built Christiana, and named it after their young queen. Delaware belonged to the Swedes for nearly twenty years, when, in 1654, Stuyvesant, the Dutch governor of New York, became jealous of this Swedish colony, and claimed the country as a part of New Netherlands. He seized upon it, and for a few years Delaware became a Dutch province, although its inhabitants were Swedes. The Swedish settlements extended along the banks of the Delaware river and bay, as high up as Trenton.

In 1664, it shared the fortunes of the rest of New
1664. Netherlands, and became, with New York and New Jersey, an English province. In 1681, when King Charles II. granted to Penn his colony of Pennsylvania, the Duke of York still claimed the "three lower counties," now forming the State of Delaware. To prevent disturbances, William Penn purchased these counties, and Delaware was united to Pennsylvania. In 1703, it became a separate province.

Very different from the New England Puritans, were the class of exiles who sought freedom from religious persecution in the Middle States. They were generally Protestants, but of such varying creeds and nations, that a different spirit prevailed from that which showed itself in New England; and throughout their colonies, we find numerous differing religious societies growing up

What prevented his carrying out the design, and who accomplished it? — Where did the Swedes settle? — Into whose hands did these settlements fall in 1664? — Of whose province did it form a part in 1681? — When was it finally separated from Pennsylvania? — How did the colonists of the Middle States differ from the New England Puritans?

side by side. The Dutch had built their first church as early as 1642, and named it St. Nicholas, in honor of the patron saint of Holland. In it was placed the town-bell, which regulated business hours, and all were obedient to its summons. Their pastors were called Dominies, and their salaries were often paid in a species of money manufactured from sea-shells, and called wampum. Much of this wampum was made in New York, from shells found on Long Island. Ministers were also paid in produce: the Dominie of Albany received one hundred and fifty beavers. When New York passed into the hands of the English, various denominations erected churches. Old Trinity arose in 1696, and in 1702 we find its Rector had opened a school for the instruction of negroes.

In New Jersey, the number of churches founded in the early days of the colony is very remarkable. Of the Presbyterian church in Newark, the Rev. Aaron Burr was pastor in 1736. He was a son-in-law of President Edwards, and father of the celebrated Aaron Burr. The Rev. Thomas Thomson, pastor of the little town of Shrewsbury, in the year 1751, impelled by love to the heathen, went forth as a missionary, to western Africa.

In the mixed population, and among the tolerant Quakers of Pennsylvania, every form of religion flourished. In Philadelphia alone, the Friends had three meetings established before the war; that founded in 1684 being the first. The Episcopalians, Presbyterians, Baptists, and others, had also several churches. Christ church was founded in 1695: in 1754, the church obtained a chime of bells from England: they were brought free of freight, and to honor the generosity of the captain, the chimes sent forth a merry peal whenever his vessel entered port. They rang too the night before market-days, a custom which is still continued. A church had been founded on the banks of the Delaware even

---

Describe the first Dutch church in New York. — What were the Dutch ministers called, and how were they paid? — What other churches were built in New York at an early date? — What is said of the churches in New Jersey? — Who was pastor of the church in Newark, and what is said of the Rev. Thomas Thomson? — What is said of religious denominations in Pennsylvania? — When was the first Friends' meeting established? — What is said of Christ church in Philadelphia?

before the landing of William Penn. It was the old Swedes' church, built in 1677: in 1700, the small wooden structure was replaced by a neat stone church, which still remains a relic of the olden time. In 1739, Whitfield preached in the open air in Philadelphia, to a congregation of 15,000 people.

In the colonies, morality was the handmaid of religion. In all, severe laws were passed against late hours, drunkenness, profanity, and Sabbath-breaking. In New York, tavern-keepers were not allowed to give suppers after 9 o'clock at night. In New Jersey, a man was fined five shillings for drunkenness, and if the offence was repeated, he was put in the stocks.

The school-learning and the schools of colonial times, were very simple, but our ancestors were faithful to their privileges, and few idle hours were passed in the Colleges of New York, New Jersey, or Pennsylvania, or in those humbler schools, which were kept in every town. Although printing had been early introduced, books were rare and highly prized. Kings (now Columbia) College, was founded in New York, in 1754, and other schools there were in town. Some were kept by Dutch masters, where our grandmothers were taught to read *English*, as an accomplishment. The College of New Jersey was founded at Elizabethtown, in 1746, thence removed to Newark, and finally, in 1757, to Princeton. In this College is still preserved the Orrery invented by Dr. Rittenhouse in 1768. It was a beautiful instrument, and very wonderful for those early days of astronomy. A gentleman writing of it in 1790, says: "There is not the like in Europe."

In Pennsylvania, the first school was commenced as early as 1683, and its master proposed to teach reading, writing, and casting accounts, for eight English shillings a year. In the country-places of Pennsylvania, schools were opened even before the foundation of the College in Philadelphia; such was the "Log

What can you say of the old Swedes' church, and of Whitfield? — How was morality preserved in the middle colonies? — Give instances from the laws of New York and New Jersey. — When was Columbia College founded? — What schools were there in New York? — When, and where, was Princeton College founded? — Where was it finally established? — What curious instrument is still preserved there? — Describe the first school established in Pennsylvania. — What other schools are named?

College" in Bucks county, and such the village school in Chester county, where studied pupils, whose talents in future years did no little honor to their faithful instructors. The University of Pennsylvania was begun in 1750, by the exertions of Dr. Franklin, who purchased the building originally intended as a meeting-house for Whitfield. In the little colony of Delaware, at Lewistown, was established a girls' school, supposed to be the first in the colonies.

Owing to English laws of trade, which were very oppressive upon the colonies, their commerce and manufactures never flourished to any great extent. This was especially true of manufactures; their commerce was somewhat more profitable. It was chiefly confined to the coasting and West India trade, though vessels occasionally found their way to England, and even to Spain, Portugal, and the Canary Islands, exporting furs, lumber, fish, and tobacco. The Dutch, in their little vessels with their very grand names, such as, "Queen Esther," "King Solomon," and "The Angel Gabriel," made quite respectable voyages for those early days. In Pennsylvania, ship-building was carried on to a great extent, and her busy population engaged in various pursuits of industry. They were good farmers, and attempted the cultivation of vineyards and silk, with some success.

On the coast of New Jersey, and in Delaware Bay, whale, and other fisheries, were carried on. Newark was celebrated for its cider as early as 1682. In 1728 there were four iron furnaces in Pennsylvania, but her rich treasures of coal remained undiscovered until the present century. The perils of the wilderness surrounded the early colonies. Dark forests, the abode of bears, wolves, and other wild animals, stretched between their settlements, and the means of communication were not easy. The

When, and by whose exertions, was the University of Pennsylvania founded? — Why did not commerce and manufactures flourish in the colonies? — Mention the extent of some of the trading voyages of the colonists. — What is said of the commerce of New York? — Mention the objects of industry which engaged the population of Pennsylvania. — What is said of fisheries? — What of the working of iron in Pennsylvania.

roads were few and bad, and travelling, in consequence, difficult, and carried on at a very slow rate. In 1772, a stage, called "The Flying Machine," is advertised to go through from Philadelphia to New York, in the (then) remarkably short time of two days.

The Middle States were peopled from so many different nations, that we cannot expect to find much uniformity in their tastes, customs, and modes of living, excepting that these were more simple than those of the present day. One exception may perhaps be made in favor of our style of dress, which is more natural, at least, if not less expensive, than the powdered and cushioned hair, huge wigs, stiff brocades, and cumbrous hoops, of our ancestors.

Although New York was under Dutch rule but forty years, yet the Dutch population was always numerous, and has left many a pleasant memento of the days of New Amsterdam. Such are the old-fashioned "stoops" or porches, where households gathered of an afternoon, and the capacious chimney-places, ornamented with scripture scenes, in the china Dutch tile, still to be seen in some of the old country-houses on Long Island. We owe to them, too, the dough-nut, the cruller, and the New-Year's cooky of our tea-tables, and many a pleasant custom. The May-day "moving time" is a relic of our Dutch ancestors, as well as the Christmas visit of Santa-Claus, the colored eggs at Easter (Paus), and the friendly New-Year's-day visiting. Of the latter, Gen. Washington is said to have remarked: "The highly favored situation of New York will, in process of years, attract emigrants, who will gradually change its ancient customs and manners; but whatever changes take place, never forget the cordial, cheerful observance of New-Year's-day."

Furniture and equipages in old colonial days were extremely simple. Carpets were scarcely known before 1750, and were rare then; the white-sanded floor was the pride of a house-keeper.

Penn's Manor, at Pennsbury, on the banks of the Delaware,

What is said of the difficulties of travelling in colonial times? — What was the style of dress of our ancestors? — Mention some usages which still remain as relics of the Dutch settlers of New York. — Repeat Gen. Washington's remark about New-Year's-day visiting. — What is said of furniture in these early times? — Describe the situation of Penn's Manor at Pennsbury.

was quite a stately mansion for those early days. A broad avenue of poplars led up to the house, which was built of stone, and surrounded by beautiful gardens and lawns.

In its large hall, which ran the whole length of the house, strangers were entertained, and not unfrequently Indian guests were welcomed at the hospitable hall of the benevolent Friend.

The furniture of this hall consisted simply of six chairs, two forms, and a long table, with pewter plates and dishes, and vessels called *cisterns*, containing water or beer. In a smaller hall, were six leathern chairs, and five maps.

The best parlor was furnished with two tables, a couch, cane chairs, and cushions of satin and green plush. In another parlor was placed the great leathern chair of the proprietor, and a clock.

The upper chambers could only boast good beds, chairs, and tables. The high-backed chairs, and the spider-legged tables, were made of oak or dark walnut. The table furniture was perhaps more elegant. We hear of blue and white china, silver-plate, and damask table-linen.

Such was the simple style in which was furnished the most elegant mansion of those days, in the colony of Pennsylvania. In later times, more of luxury was known. In a letter, written by Mrs. Franklin to her husband, in 1765, she speaks of a papered room, horse-hair chairs, a side-board, and three carpets.

What is said of the great hall and its furniture? — Describe the furniture of the parlors and other rooms? — Of what was the furniture made, and what is said of the table furniture? — Recite from Mrs. Franklin's letter.

REVIEW QUESTIONS. — Who were the Friends or Quakers? — Relate the early history of William Penn. — When was a colony granted to him?

What can you say of his designs for settling it? — What of Penn's treaty with the Indians? — What of the progress of his colony?

Relate the story of Franklin. — What of Pennsylvania during the "old French war?"

By whom was Delaware settled? — What of its further history?

What can you say of churches in New York, prior to the revolution? — In New Jersey? — In Pennsylvania?

What of the early schools of the colonies? — Of those in Pennsylvania? — What of their trade and manufactures?

What of their industry, and the condition of the country? — What customs have the Dutch handed down to us? — What of Penn's Manor on the Delaware

CHAPTER VII.

SOUTHERN STATES

"Far southward in that sunny clime,
Where bright magnolias bloom,
And the orange with the lime-tree vies,
In shedding rich perfume."

JAMES.

WE have now come to the history of the southern colonies, so different in climate, productions, and institutions, from those about which we have been studying.

These, with Delaware, lie south of Mason and Dixon's line, and in them slavery exists. It will be well to learn, therefore, how the negro slave came to be brought to our country.

At the time of the discovery of America, which was made by a mariner in the service of Spain, that country was engaged in a war with the Moors, a people at that time living in the south of Spain, but afterwards driven across to Morocco and the northern parts of Africa. All the Moors whom the Spaniards took captive were made slaves, and when the war was carried into Africa, they brought home, not only Moorish slaves, but negroes, or black Moors, as the Spaniards called them.

When, on the discovery of America, the West India Islands came to be settled by the Spanish, they took thither their Moorish and a few of their black Moor slaves. Thus was the negro first brought by the Spaniards to America: but the labor in the islands was for several years chiefly performed by the enslaved native

In what particulars do the southern States differ from those of the north? — In what States does slavery exist? — When America was discovered by the Spaniards, with what people were they at war? — How did the Spaniards obtain negro slaves? — By whom was the labor in the West Indies at first performed?

Indian. At length, in the year 1517, Las Casas, a benevolent and good man, feeling deeply for the sufferings of the Indian, whose habits and love of freedom made it dreadful for him to be a slave, and seeing how much better the native of Africa could endure toiling under the tropical sun, proposed that negroes should be brought to the West Indies. Las Casas, in his earnest desire to spare the Indian, little thought he was arousing a spirit of avarice which would inflict cruel wrong on the poor African. Charles V. of Spain gave permission for four thousand negroes to be carried to the West Indies annually, for slaves.

England did not engage in the slave-trade until the year 1567, when Admiral Sir John Hawkins brought a cargo of slaves, and sold them in the West Indies, for such an amount of sugar, ginger, and pearls, that Queen Elizabeth, in an evil hour, gave her sanction to the traffic. No slaves were actually brought into any English colony in America, until the year 1620. The year that the Pilgrims landed on Plymouth Rock, twenty negroes were brought by a Dutch vessel into James river, Virginia, and sold as slaves to the English colonists. 1620.

The colonists, from Maine to Georgia, disliked the slave-trade, and for a long time discouraged it, but it was profitable to the English merchants, especially to a company of them known as "The Royal African Company," and so the colonies were obliged to receive the slave. The negro thrives best in a warm climate; it is, therefore, in the south alone, that slavery, which originally existed in all the colonies, has taken such a hold, and continued so long, that the removal of the evil, though much to be desired, has become, year by year, a question of greater difficulty.

Who proposed importing negroes for slaves, and with what design? — Was this productive of good? — How was the proposition acted upon? — When did England first engage in the slave-trade? — When, and where, were slaves first brought into an English colony? — Did the colonists like the slave-trade? — Why is slavery confined to the south?

Lord Baltimore receiving the Charter from the King.

MARYLAND.

THE territory now occupied by the State of Maryland was at first considered a part of Virginia. In the year 1631, a Virginia trader, William Clayborne, had established a settlement on Kent Island, in Chesapeake Bay. In the following year, however, King Charles I. granted the unoccupied lands, lying on the Bay, to George Calvert Lord Baltimore, who resolved to plant a colony. He drew up a charter, which, although he was himself a Ro-

Who founded the first settlement in Maryland? — To whom was the colony afterwards granted?

man Catholic, granted entire religious freedom to all Christian people.

By the grant made to Lord Baltimore, the new colony was to be, as it were, a little independent kingdom, of which the proprietary was sole monarch. It was the only colony in which the king promised, by the charter he granted, not to interfere. He was not to tax them, nor to appoint their officers, nor disturb the colonists in any manner. Lord Baltimore was only required to express his fealty to the king of England, by paying him yearly a tribute of two Indian arrows and a fifth of all gold or silver ore which might be found. 1632.

Lord Baltimore died before he had entered into possession of his colony. His son, Cecil Calvert, inherited, with his title and honors, the noble and liberal views of his father. He did not come to America himself, but sent out his brother, Leonard Calvert, with the first colonists.

In March, of the year 1634, two vessels, "The Ark," and "The Dove," anchored in the waters of Chesapeake Bay: on board of them were the first settlers of Maryland; chiefly Roman Catholic gentlemen, with their families and households. They entered the Potomac river, and landed at a little Indian village, which they named St. Mary's. They took possession of the country in the name of Christ and of England, and called it Maryland, in honor of Queen Henrietta Maria. 1634.

Lord Baltimore did everything for the freedom and happiness of his colony, but disturbances were excited by William Clayborne, who, on account of his early settlement at Kent Island, claimed the colony, and refused to submit to Lord Baltimore. His claim being refused by the King of England, Clayborne returned to Maryland, determined on revenge. He raised a party against Lord Baltimore and the governor whom he had appointed, and was so successful that the governor was obliged to flee into Virginia, and remain there two years. 1645.

Mention the liberal terms of the charter. — Did Lord Baltimore himself take possession of Maryland? — Who was sent out after his death? — When, and where, was the first settlement made, and who were the colonists? — Who created disturbances in the colony, and on what ground? — What of his success?

These disturbances continued for many years.

1654. In 1654, when Cromwell and the Puritans were in power, Clayborne succeeded in rousing the feelings of the Protestants against the Roman Catholics to such an extent, that, forgetting the gratitude which was due to the founders of the colony, they passed an act, declaring that Roman Catholics were not entitled to protection from the laws of Maryland. At length, in 1691, King William III. put an end to these disturbances in this colony, by making it a royal province, and establishing the church of England. In 1694 the old Roman Catholic capital of St. Mary's was deserted, and the Assembly met at Annapolis.

1715. Maryland continued under royal governors until a descendant of Lord Baltimore becoming a Protestant, the colony was given to him, with very nearly the same privileges as those bestowed on his ancestor, the first Lord Baltimore. The Assembly of the people consisted of four members from each county and two from Annapolis. In each county, persons were appointed to establish schools and provide suitable teachers.

What happened in 1654? — What injustice was committed? — When, and by whom, was Maryland made a royal province? — What town became the capital? — When was Maryland restored to Lord Baltimore?

REVIEW QUESTIONS. — Relate the means by which negroes were first brought to Spain, and thence to America? — How did negroes come to be employed as slaves in the West Indies?

When, and by what act, was slavery introduced into an English colony? — How was slavery regarded in the colonies, and why has it continued at the south?

Under what charter was Maryland founded? — What can you say of the proprietary of Maryland?

What troubles disturbed this province, and what was done with it in 1691? — When was it restored to the proprietary, and under what circumstances?

CHAPTER VIII.

VIRGINIA.

"All hail! thou birth-place of the glowing West,
Thou seem'st the towering eagle's ruined nest."

J. K. PAULDING.

ON the southern bank of the James river, in Virginia, stands the ruin of an old church: its crumbling tower and broken arch are almost hidden by the shrubbery and tangled vines which cover it. Within the walls of the churchyard, may be found a few very old tombstones, overgrown with ivy and long grass. And this is all that remains of the first English settlement in America; — the colony of Jamestown.

The planting of this first colony was owing to the efforts of a very remarkable man, Captain John Smith, whose strange adventures have made him one of the most interesting characters in the history of America.

John Smith was born in Lincolnshire, England, in the year 1559. At the age of thirteen, he sold his school-books and satchel, in hopes of getting money enough to go to sea. In this he was disappointed, and he did not leave England until he was fifteen. He then went to Holland and France, where he studied the art of war. At the early age of seventeen years, he began his adventures. He was sailing in a small vessel in the Mediterranean sea, when a storm arose. The crew were Roman Catholics and very superstitious, and because Smith was a Protestant, they thought that he was the cause of the storm, and, like Jonah of old, he was cast into the sea. Being a good swimmer,

Describe the ruins of Jamestown. — Who planted the first colony in Virginia? — When, and where, was John Smith born? — What did he wish to do at the age of thirteen? — When did he leave England? — What was his first adventure?

he reached St. Mary's, a little island, in safety, and from thence sailed in a French vessel to Egypt. His next adventure was in Austria: he joined the Austrian army, which was then fighting the Turks, and had command given him of a company of horse, which was known as the "Fiery Dragoons." During the siege of a town, a Turkish officer, "to amuse the ladies," offered to engage in single fight with any Christian soldier in the Austrian army. Smith was chosen, and he soon conquered the Turk, and cut off his head. He fought with two other chiefs, named Mulgro and Grualgo, with the same success, but shortly after, in a skirmish with the Turks, he was severely wounded and taken prisoner. He was now sold as a slave, and the pacha who bought him afterwards presented him to a lady in Constantinople. This Turkish lady pitied his misfortunes and youth, and sent him to her brother in the Crimea, a peninsula in the Black Sea, with orders that he should be kindly treated. These orders were not obeyed. Smith suffered so much from the harshness of his new master, that one day, when alone in the field together, he fought with and slew him. Seizing a horse, he escaped "through forest-paths," to Austria. He then determined to return "to his own sweet country," but hearing of wars in Morocco in Africa, he was tempted thither in search of new adventures. He visited the Canary Islands, and was in a naval battle between the French and Spaniards. At last, he returned to his native England, and reached it at the time when the Jamestown colonists were about to embark for America. To Smith's daring and roving temper, the idea of a New World for strange adventures and exploits, was irresistible, and he joined the colonists.

1602.

These Virginia settlers were sent out by a company of "noblemen, gentlemen, and merchants, residing in and about London,"

What army did he join, and with whom were they at war? — How did Smith distinguish himself in combats with the Turks? — What befell him in 1602? — Where was he sent by his Turkish mistress, and with what directions? — How was Smith treated by his new master, and what finally did he do? — Where did he next go? — What determined Smith to come to America? — By whom were the Virginia colonists sent out?

and called the London Company. The colonists left England in a little fleet, consisting only of three vessels, and bearing one hundred and five passengers. The country for which they embarked was a wilderness, where forests were to be cleared and houses to be built, and yet of their number only twelve were laborers. They brought with them no "charter of liberties," no "right of government within themselves," nothing which might cheer them with hope, amid the trials of planting a new home in the savage wilds of America. They were to be governed by a council of the merchant-company in England: men who cared more to make themselves rich, than to make the colonists happy. A few men, not chosen by the colonists, but named by the council at home, were to govern them in all lesser affairs, which did not require directions from England. The names of these men and their instructions, were carefully laid away in a sealed box, which was not to be opened until they reached Virginia; therefore, when jealous feelings and disorders sprang up, there was no one on board who had a right to check them, by taking the government of the others upon himself. Dec. 1606.

Captain Christopher Newport, who commanded the vessel, not knowing a more direct route to America, pursued the old passage, southward, to the Canary Isles, thence to the West Indies. Turning north, they were driven by a storm into Chesapeake Bay. They called the headlands between which they entered the Bay, Capes Henry and Charles, in honor of the young princes of England. To Old Point Comfort they gave its name because of the deep water for anchorage which they found there; and sailing up the James river, they named it in honor of their king. On the 23d of May, 1607, after a weary and distressing voyage, they landed and commenced the settlement of Jamestown. 1607. May, 1607.

In a few weeks, the condition of the colonists was most deplorable. They were surrounded by hostile Indians, with but few

What were their prospects in America? — How were they to be governed? — What occasioned difficulty during the voyage? — Describe their route. — When, and where, did they land, and what did they name the spot? — What was soon the condition of the colony?

hardy men to cultivate the soil, or build them houses; the provisions which they had brought from England were consumed; and disease arose from the intolerable heat of summer and the dampness of the climate. During the warm months, fifty of their number died. Then, too, some of the more idle colonists, mistaking some shining particles for precious gold, began to dig and load their vessel with the worthless dust. Thus they neglected that labor on which a blessing might have rested, and gave themselves up to that which proved a root of evil.

1607. With autumn, came abundance of game and wild water-fowl, which saved the poor remnant of fifty emigrants from starvation.

Captain John Smith, who, although treated unkindly by the colonists, had been their best friend during the time of suffering, now took advantage of their improved condition to leave them and explore the country. He sailed up the Chickahominy river for fifty miles; then, leaving the boat, with four companions he plunged into the wilderness. He was surrounded by a band of Indians, his two white companions were killed, but Smith's presence of mind saved his life. He knew that wonders divert and delight the savage mind, and he now showed his captors a pocket compass, told them of the shape of the earth, and explained how "the sun and the moon and the stars chased each other." They permitted him to write to Jamestown, and when they found that the *letter* he sent gave information to his friends, they were greatly astonished. They thought he had the power of giving to the *paper* life and intelligence; for the Indians, having no written language, could not imagine how a few marks on paper could communicate ideas. He was carried in triumph to many of their settlements on the Rappahannock and Potomac rivers, and finally taken to Powhatan, the great chief of the tribe, who lived on York river, in what is now Gloucester county, Virginia. Here, after three days' captivity, he was condemned to die. His arms

What did some of the more idle colonists engage in?—What relieved the remnant from starvation?—What befell Smith on his exploring expedition?—How did he divert the savages?—Why did Smith's letter astonish the savages?—Where was he carried?—To what was he condemned?

Captain John Smith before Powhatan.

were bound, his head was laid upon the stone, and the huge club of the Indian was uplifted, but, ere the blow fell, young Pocahontas, the only child of Powhatan, had thrown herself between the prisoner and the deadly weapon. The blow could not descend upon her, and Smith's life was saved. The firm character of Smith, and, it may be, a feeling that the Great Spirit had prevented their taking his life, changed the Indians from 1608.

Describe his rescue. — What effect had this upon the Indians?

enemies to friends. They made a treaty with him, and permitted him to return to Jamestown. From this time, during Smith's life, a friendly intercourse was kept up with the Indians, and often Pocahontas, "the dearest daughter of the king," as the grateful colonists called her, brought baskets of corn and provisions to the garrison at Jamestown.

Shortly after Smith's return to the colony, a new emigration arrived, but they were chiefly "gentlemen and goldsmiths," and so taken up with the desire for gold, that no other industry was practised. Smith left them to their folly, and commenced another exploration of the country. In two voyages in an open boat, he sailed up to the head of Chesapeake Bay, ascended many of the rivers which flow into it, and surveyed the surrounding country. He travelled, in this way, several hundred miles, and made a valuable map of the country.

On his return a second time to Jamestown, Smith was made president of the council. He found it a hard task to restore order; many were still eager about gold-digging, and all were unaccustomed to the patient labor of tilling the ground. Smith wrote to the company in England, begging them to "send but thirty carpenters, husbandmen, gardeners, fishermen, blacksmiths, masons, and diggers-up of trees' roots, rather than a thousand" of such as he then had. His labors for the good of the people met with some success, the gentlemen became "accomplished wood-cutters," and during the year 1609, more industry and happiness existed than had before been known in the colony.

1609.

Towards the close of the year, Smith received a severe wound, which obliged him to return to England to be cured. On his departure, the colonists went back to their old habits of idleness, and were soon in great distress; their provisions of food were

What is said of Pocahontas' kindness to the colonists? — Why did Smith leave the colonists again? — Describe his explorations of the country. — What kind of colonists did Smith send to England for? — How were Smith's labors rewarded? — When, and why, did he return to England? — What was the condition of the colonists on Smith's departure?

nearly gone, and they had not cultivated sufficient ground to yield them a fresh supply.

Smith was the only man whom the Indians feared, and now that he was gone, they ventured to show their hostility, and murdered those parties of white men who went among them in search of food. Some of the colonists were wicked enough, in their despair, to seize a ship and become pirates. The distress was increased too, in the spring, by an addition to their numbers.

These new colonists had left England the year previous: they had been wrecked on the islands of Bermuda: with great skill and industry, they had built out of the wreck and the timber growing on the island, two little vessels, and then sailed for Virginia, hoping to reach a happy and prosperous colony, where they should enjoy abundance. Their disappointment and distress was very great, when, on reaching Jamestown, they found the colonists in a starving condition. 1610.

The despair of all parties was now at its height, and they determined to abandon the settlement entirely, and even wished to burn the town, which had been for them the scene of so much misery. This last act of despair Sir T. Gates prevented. Embarked in four little vessels, these wretched people bade farewell to Jamestown. "None dropped a tear, for none had enjoyed one day of happiness." Slowly their little vessels fell down the river with the tide; they had nearly reached its mouth, when, to their great astonishment and delight, they met a long-boat, belonging to an English ship, which, laden with provisions and emigrants, and having on board their new governor, Lord De-La-Ware, had anchored in the Bay.

The delight was now as great as their despair had been, and they celebrated the 18th of June, as the day of their happy restoration.

Under Lord Delaware's wise government, order and industry

To what crime did some of their number resort? — How was their distress increased? — Relate the previous adventures of these new colonists. — What did the colonists now do? — What occurred when they reached the mouth of James river? — What is said of their feeling on this occasion? — What is said of Lord Delaware's administration?

were restored, but his health soon failed, and the colonists again felt a season of scarcity and despondency.

On Lord Delaware's return to England, in 1611, Sir Thomas Gates was sent to Virginia as governor. He brought with him three hundred emigrants, one hundred kine, and large stores of provisions. He was welcomed with delight by the colonists, and the grateful prayer, "Lord bless England, our sweet native country," ascended daily, morning and evening, from the little church at Jamestown.

Who succeeded him, and what did he bring with him? — How was he received in Virginia?

REVIEW QUESTIONS. — Relate the adventures of John Smith to the time of his joining the Jamestown colonists. — Describe the character and prospects of the Virginia settlers.

Describe the voyage: mention when, and where, it ended. — Describe the condition of the colony at the end of the year.

Relate Smith's adventures on his exploring expedition. — Relate his remarkable rescue. — Relate his exertions for the colony. — Why did he leave the colony, and what was the consequence? — Describe the distress of the colonists in 1610, and their action in consequence.

How were they relieved, and what was their condition under Lord Delaware and Sir T. Gates' administration?

CHAPTER IX.

VIRGINIA (Continued.)

"A moment and the pageant's gone;
The red men are no more;
The pale-faced strangers stand alone
Upon the river's shore.

PAULDING.

SIX years had now passed away since the English first came to Jamestown, and the little Indian girl Pocahontas had grown to womanhood. The gentle virtues which had marked her as a child, adorned her character now, and rendered her doubly dear to the heart of her father. But his affection for her was to receive a severe trial at the hands of the treacherous white man. A marauding party from the colony seized Pocahontas, and in the hope of obtaining a large ransom from her father, carried her off to Jamestown. The chieftain, enraged at this wickedness, instead of offering a ransom, prepared to make war. But He who brings good out of evil, turned away this threatened calamity. A young Englishman, named Rolfe, loved Pocahontas, and she consented to become his wife. This arrangement satisfied Powhatan, and he laid aside all thoughts of war. 1613.

In the little church at Jamestown, which was kept prettily dressed with wild flowers, Pocahontas, before her marriage, received the rite of baptism. The Christian name then given her was Rebecca. We may hope that she truly embraced the faith of the Lord Jesus Christ into which she was baptised. It is pleasant to think that this Indian girl, who practised so well the duties which a heathen knows, should have been taught of the Saviour those higher and holier virtues which it is the blessed privilege of His religion alone to bestow.

What is said of the character of Pocahontas? — What evil deed was committed towards her? — What threatened the colony in consequence? — How was this evil averted? — When, and where, was she baptized?

1616. Three years after her marriage she accompanied her husband to England. She was introduced at Court and in the city of London, as the Lady Rebecca, and received many kind attentions, although it is said King James I. was jealous of Rolfe, fearing, "as he had married an *Indian princess*, he might lay claim to the crown of Virginia." It is also said that Smith, fearing this jealousy of the king, would not allow Pocahontas to call him "father," the name she had always given him in Virginia, and this was a cause of unhappiness to her.

1617. At the end of a year, as they were about returning to America, Pocahontas, whose health had been affected by the climate of England, fell ill and died. She left an only son, from whom many well-known families in Virginia are descended.

In the year 1619, the population of the colony increased greatly. Large numbers of men and women came over and planted homes in Virginia. In this year, under Governor Yeardley, the people, for the first time, obtained a share in the government. At Jamestown was held the first colonial Assembly, consisting of the governor, his council, and two representatives, called burgesses, from "each of the eleven boroughs" of Virginia. Two years after, the London Company granted to the colonists a written constitution, which confirmed to them a share in the government.

1622. After Powhatan's death, his brother, the Chief Opechan canough, roused the Indians against the white settlers, and in 1622, a fearful and general massacre reduced the eighty settlements of the colony to six or seven. Jamestown was saved by the warning of a friendly Indian. A war now commenced, which for fourteen years kept every plantation in a state of alarm. At length, in 1646, peace was made: the Indians were driven away, and their hunting-grounds planted by the colonists.

1624. In 1624, King James I. took from the London Company their charter, and sent over a governor with twelve

To what country did she go, and how was she received? — What caused her unhappiness? — When, and where, did she die? — What is said of the colony in 1619? — What important right did they obtain? — How did an Indian war commence in 1622? — How long did this war last, and what was the result? — In 1624 what change took place in the government of the colony?

councillors, appointed by himself. Neither this king nor his successor, Charles I., showed much consideration towards the Virginians, notwithstanding their loyalty, ruling the colony more for their own profit than for the happiness of the colonists. When Cromwell and the Parliament were in power, the Virginians submitted, and being allowed their own Assembly and religious toleration, the colony prospered. The people governed themselves wisely and well.

When the Stuart kings were restored to the throne in England, the rich planters or aristocracy of Virginia gained much power. They were disposed to be jealous of the smaller land-holders, and to take from them their rightful share in the government. The laws too of King Charles II. concerning their trade, were very oppressive. The colonists were not allowed to ship their merchandize excepting in English vessels, and they could send nothing to be sold in England which would interfere with manufacturers there. Their trade, too, with other colonies was restrained, and they were obliged to import from England nearly everything they used, as domestic manufacture was either discouraged or forbidden. 1660.

By many acts of injustice and oppression the people became excited, and at last roused to rebellion. In the year 1675, the Indians on the northern frontier became troublesome, and their invasions carried desolation and death to many a lonely plantation. The people asked for arms to defend themselves: the governor refused to give them, and on this refusal, Nathaniel Bacon, one of their number, determined to arm himself against the Indians without the governor's commission. In this act he was joined by a body of 500 men. At first they were successful, and Governor Berkeley was obliged to yield to Bacon, and grant him a commission. But afterwards he withdrew this, 1675.

How did James and Charles I. govern Virginia? — What was its condition under Cromwell? — What occurred in Virginia when Charles II. came to the throne? — How was their commerce restricted? — To what evils were they exposed in 1675? — What request did they make? — On the governor's refusal, what did one of their number do? — How far was he successful? — How did the governor act afterwards?

1676. and while the brave young planter was defending the soil and homes of Virginia against a savage foe, the governor not only proclaimed him a traitor, but raised an army to oppose him. With a force of nearly one thousand men, Sir W. Berkeley had taken possession of Jamestown: Bacon marched against him and obliged him to abandon his position; he then entered the town, which, not being able to keep, he set on fire, to prevent its falling into the governor's hands. Thus Jamestown, consisting of eighteen houses, a State House, and the Old Church;—the first home in Virginia, endeared by a thousand associations, was laid in ashes. The ruins of the Old Church alone mark the spot, where once stood the capital of the Old Dominion.

Nathaniel Bacon was cut off in the midst of success, and shortly after his death, his party were subdued. Many who had taken up arms were punished with death. The next year, 1677, Sir W. Berkeley returned to England: his departure was celebrated with joy by the colonists, and so severely was he censured in England for his cruelty, that his death, which occurred shortly after, is said to have been in consequence of it.

On the suppression of the rebellion, the people of Virginia suffered much, for a few years, from the royal governor and council appointed over them: but the spirit of liberty was spreading wider and deeper, and many of those who had formerly supported the royalists, were roused by their injustice and oppression to side with the people in maintaining their rights. In 1693, towards the close of the century, the College of William and Mary was founded.

From the beginning of the 18th century, the Virginians, as well as the other colonists, saw with alarm that the French, who already possessed Canada and Louisiana, were encroaching more and more on territory which the English claimed as their own. They had made many settlements in the West, and were making friends of the Indian tribes in the valley of the Ohio, and drawing

During this struggle what befell Jamestown? — How did this contest end? — How was the governor's conduct regarded? — What was the state of the colony for the next few years? — What nation was encroaching on the territory of Virginia?

nearer and nearer to the western borders of Virginia and Pennsylvania. To prevent this, the people of these two colonies were urged to settle further west, but the country was very wild, and it was not until the year 1732 that the first white person crossed the Blue Ridge and settled in the valley of Virginia.

In that very year was born one, who, in God's providence, was destined, not only to drive the French from his country, but to place that country among the independent nations of the earth.

The French continued their encroachments year by year, and at length planned a chain of forts extending through the western parts of Pennsylvania and Virginia to the Ohio, and down that river and the Mississippi to New Orleans. To oppose these, on the part of the English, there were only a few traders' homes west of the Alleghanies in Virginia, and a feeble settlement at Laurel Hill, in the western part of Pennsylvania. 1653.

The governor of Virginia now resolved to send a remonstrance to the French on the Ohio, warning them against intrusions on English colonies. The mission was a difficult one, but the messenger was well chosen. George Washington, then twenty-one years of age, an heroic, noble youth, whose early self-denials gave promise of what his future life would be, was sent by Governor Dinwiddie on this long and perilous journey.

Leaving Williamsburg on the last day of October, Washington, with four attendants, a guide, and an interpreter, started for the West. Their route lay through the gloomy autumn woods, across swollen streams, and over rugged mountains; an unbroken wilderness, with no path but the trail of the Indian to guide them. In nine days they reached the spot where the city of Pittsburg now stands: Washington's quick eye saw the advantages of the position for a fortress to defend the Ohio, and determining to advise it, pushed on to the northern part of Pennsylvania, where

What were the colonists urged to do? — Who was born in 1632? — What design had the French formed? — What is said of colonial settlements west of the Alleghanies? — What was done by the governor of Virginia? — Describe Washington's route. — What site attracted his attention, and for what purpose?

he met the French commander, and presented the English governor's remonstrance. The answer which Washington received
1754. was not very satisfactory, and he hastened his return to Virginia. The horses which they had brought on the journey had given out, and they were obliged to return on foot. "The cold increased very fast; the paths grew worse by a deep snow continually freezing," but Washington, wrapping himself in an Indian dress, with gun in hand, and pack on his back, the day after Christmas quitted the usual path, and with but one companion, hurried the nearest way to the Forks of the Ohio. In passing through the forest, an Indian, lying in wait for him, shot at him but missed his aim: "on reaching the Alleghany, with one poor hatchet and a whole day's work, a raft was constructed and launched. But before they were half over the river, they were caught in the running ice, expecting every moment to be crushed, unable to reach either shore. Putting out a pole to stop the raft, Washington was jerked into the deep water, and saved himself only by grasping at the raft-logs. They were obliged to make for an island:"* there they remained all night; in the morning the ice had frozen, and they crossed upon it. Amid all these perils, the goodness of God conducted Washington in safety.

The refusal of the French to give up their claim to western Pennsylvania and Virginia, caused great alarm in the colonies, and preparations were made for war. An attempt was made by the colonists to establish themselves at the point where the three rivers meet, as Washington had recommended; but they were driven away by the French, who built a strong fort at this advantageous spot, and named it Du Quesne (Du-Kane.)

In May of 1754, Washington was sent against the enemy, and his first battle was fought at a place called the Great Meadows:

He was victorious, and in the engagement the French commander was killed. The advantage thus gained was soon lost, for

What is said of the French commander's reply? — Relate Washington's adventures and perils on his return? — What effect had the conduct of the French upon the colonists? — Where did they try to build a fort, and how did they fail? — Where was Washington's first battle fought, and with what success?

*Bancroft.

Washington amid the ice of the Alleghany.

want of a sufficient number of men to keep up the struggle; and by the end of the year, the French again held possession of the valley of the Ohio.

In the spring of 1755, General Braddock was sent from England to command the army in America, and he determined to undertake, in person, the conquest of Fort Du Quesne. He was a brave man, but vain and obstinate; and he had so false an idea of the colonists, as really to think that the only reason the French had not been driven from their posts, was want of courage and wisdom on the part of the provincial troops.

He knew nothing of the wilderness-country in which he had come to fight, nor of the cunning Indian foe he would have to

Who took the command in 1755, and what enterprise did he undertake? — What was Braddock's character? — How did he behave towards the colonists? — Describe the advance towards Fort Du Quesne.

encounter; and, scorning to take the advice of Washington, who had been invited to attend him as an aid-de-camp, he prepared his army as for a European battle-field: useless delays prevented his advance, giving the French time to collect more troops, and weakening his own army by the fatigue and want of proper food.

1755. At length, on the 9th of July, the English army, of about twelve hundred men, in fine uniform and glittering arms, and in exactest military order, were within a few miles of Fort Du Quesne. Suddenly a sharp firing was heard, and the unfortunate army found themselves surrounded by an ambush of French and Indians. The English fought desperately, but were soon thrown into confusion, for the Indians fired upon them from behind trees and rocks and the hills above their heads, causing dreadful destruction; while Braddock's soldiers, unused to such warfare, and seeing no enemy, wasted their powder by firing without aim, and often in the air.

General Braddock had three horses shot under him, and was at length borne from the field mortally wounded.

The life of Washington was more than once in danger. "An Indian chief singled him out with his rifle, and bade others of his warriors do the same. Two horses were killed under him; four balls penetrated his coat."* The Indians thought some powerful Manitou or guardian angel protected him; but Washington owned and blessed the "all-powerful dispensations" of a Divine providence, which, while *many* fell at his right hand and on his left, had preserved him in the midst of danger.

The few who survived this battle retreated to Fort Cumberland, and afterwards to Philadelphia, leaving the French in complete possession of the country.

This possession they maintained until 1757–8, when the wisdom of Mr. Pitt, then at the head of affairs in England, gave a brighter aspect to the French war in America.

By what was Braddock's army surprised? — Describe the battle and its result. — What is said of Washington's peril and deliverance? — What is said of the retreat after this battle? — How long did the French keep Fort Du Quesne?

* Bancroft.

In November of 1758, while General Wolfe was preparing to attack Quebec, Colonel Washington, with a few brave provincial troops, a detachment from the army of General Forbes, was approaching Fort Du Quesne. His march was too rapid to afford the French a warning, and as he drew near the fort, the disheartened garrison set fire to it, and sailed down the Ohio. The colonial troops took triumphant possession, and with one voice, named the place Pittsburgh, in honor of the great statesman, who all his life long had honored and protected the interests of America.

At the close of the year, Washington retired from the army, and on his marriage, which took place shortly after, he repaired to his home at Mount Vernon.

Describe the attack made upon it in 1758, and the result. — In whose honor was it named?

REVIEW QUESTIONS. — Relate the circumstances of Pocahontas' marriage, and her subsequent history. — What was granted to the Virginia colonists in 1619? — What Indian war harassed the colonists, and for how long?

What was the condition of Virginia under James and Charles I. during Cromwell's time, and at the restoration? — Give the history of Bacon's rebellion.

Relate the encroachments of the French, and the efforts made to oppose them. — Describe Washington's mission, and its results. — Mention the principal events of the old French war in Virginia.

CHAPTER X.

THE CAROLINAS AND GEORGIA.

"Our forest life was rough and rude,
And dangers closed us round,
But here amid the green old wood,
Freedom was sought and found."

GALLAGHER.

1562. As early as the year 1562, a colony of Huguenots or French Protestants, had been sent out by Admiral Coligny to found a home, free from persecution, in the New World. Reaching the southern coast of our country, they landed on a little island near the southern boundary of the present State of South Carolina, and raising a monument engraved with the lilies of France, they took possession of the country, and named it Carolina, in honor of Charles or Carolus IX. king of France.

This feeble colony of twenty-six souls, receiving no supplies from France, soon became unhappy, and determined to return to their native country. They built a small vessel, but neglected to take with them sufficient food. At sea, they endured all the horrors of famine; they were captured by an English vessel, a few landed on the coast of France, and the remainder were carried to England. Thus ended the French settlement of Carolina.

For twelve years more the country remained unvisited: at the
1584. end of that time, and between the years 1584 and 1590, Sir Walter Raleigh, a celebrated English nobleman, sent out no less than four expeditions to colonize the coasts of Carolina, or South-Virginia, as the English at that time called the country. All of these attempts failed. The first voyagers returned with glowing accounts of the beauty of the country, the kindliness and

When, and by whom, was the first colony brought to the Carolina coast? — What became of this French colony? — How many, and during what years, were colonies sent out by Sir Walter Raleigh? — What became of the first?

simple manners of the natives, and the fertility of the soil; but they made no attempt at a settlement.

The next visitors, a little colony of 108, landed at Roanoke, and explored the coast about Albemarle and Pamlico sounds. They were received kindly by the Indians, whom they "described as too feeble to be feared; clothed in mantles and aprons of deer-skin; having no weapons but wooden swords and bows of witch-hazel, with arrows of reeds; no armor but targets of bark and sticks wickered together with thread." *

The culture of tobacco, maize, and sweet potatoes, all new and strange productions to the English, excited the admiration of the colonists, but did not dispose them to industry.

At the end of a year, having aroused the ill-will of the Indians by their unkind treatment, they grew discontented, and returned to England. Just after they had embarked, a third colony, with fresh provisions, landed on the island of Roanoke: they were disappointed in not finding the friends they had come to relieve, and only fifteen of the new-comers remained on the island: these were afterwards massacred by the Indians, whose enmity had been excited by the previous colonists. 1586.

Not discouraged by the ill-success of former attempts, Sir Walter's last expedition proceeded to America, to found "the city of Raleigh" and establish a permanent and prosperous colony. But the result was far different. Events in England prevented their generous benefactor from sending them supplies. When, at the end of two years, their governor was sent out to relieve them, he found "the island of Roanoke a desert," nor could any trace of the colony be found. They had either been killed by the Indians or adopted into some of their tribes.

Thus nearly a century passed away, and Carolina was still uncolonized, nor did its first permanent settlers come from England.

Where did the next colony land? — Repeat their description of the Indians. — What new vegetable productions did they find? — What became of this colony? — What was the end of the third colony sent out from England? — What was the fourth colony to found? — What was the probable fate of this colony?

* Bancroft.

They were oppressed emigrants from Virginia, adventurers from New England, and hardy colonists from Barbadoes. These different colonies settled on Albemarle sound and Cape Fear river: they all loved their own personal freedom, made the few laws they needed, and lived happily almost without government.

But another state of affairs was preparing for them in England. In the year 1663, King Charles II. had granted Carolina to seven courtiers, to divide, own, and govern for themselves. Among these, were the celebrated Earl of Clarendon, Monk, Duke of Albemarle, and Lord Ashley Cooper, afterwards Earl of Shaftesbury.

These noblemen divided the country into baronies and manors, planned orders of nobility, palatines, earls, and barons, and in imagination, drew up a splendid style of government for the few scattered planters on the coast of Carolina.

The Earl of Shaftesbury employed John Locke, a celebrated philosopher, to draw up a constitution for the new colony. Mr.
1670. Locke was a wise and learned man, but he knew nothing of the manner of thinking and living in the wilderness of America, and he planned his laws for a state of things which never did and never could exist there. Although they were very much praised in Europe, they met with neither acceptance nor success in Carolina. By this constitution the Church of England was established in the colony, although other forms of religion
1672. were tolerated. George Fox, the founder of the Society of Friends, visited the scattered settlements of Carolina. His doctrines found an entrance into many a heart, and the first Christian Society in the colony were the Quakers.

In 1670, the noblemen who owned Carolina sent out three ships with emigrants, to form a colony. They landed, and began
1680. a settlement on the banks of the Ashley river. Ten years afterwards, the colonists removed to a point of land

From whence came the first actual settlers of Carolina? — Where did they settle? — To whom was the country granted in 1663? — What was Locke employed to do? — What is said of his constitution? — What was the first religious Society in Carolina? — When was old Charleston founded?

between the Ashley and Cooper rivers. They had chosen a beautiful spot: "among ancient groves that swept down to the river's banks, and were covered with the yellow jasmine," arose the first few cabins which founded the city of Charleston. Its loveliness attracted many emigrants.

From England came alike the impoverished royalist and the persecuted dissenter: Scotland and Ireland sent colonies: the Dutch, driven from New York, found a refuge in Carolina; but in greater numbers still, flocked the poor hunted Huguenots of France. During the year 1685, the persecution of Protestants throughout France was cruel in the extreme; they were even forbidden to emigrate; but in spite of this prohibition, so great were their sufferings, that many fled secretly in disguise from their country. From the province of Languedoc, from the Bay of Biscay, from the valleys of the Seine, the Loire, and the Garonne, from every part of France, hundreds of Huguenots sought in Carolina a hospitable refuge, a country "where the fires of religious persecution were never to be kindled." They met a *southern* welcome; lands were given them, and they began to build. Their homes and plantations lay upon the banks of the Cooper; but their church had been built in Charleston, which had sprung up so prosperously at the junction of the Ashley and Cooper; and thither, every Sabbath, might be seen these pious households, making their way in light skiffs upon the river, through scenes so tranquil, that silence was broken only by the rippling of oars, and the hum of the flourishing village that gemmed the confluence of the rivers."* 1685.

In both the Carolinas, industry toiled and was rewarded. The rice-plant had been brought from Madagascar, and throve so well, that the cultivators soon became rich. On the large rice plantations numbers of negroes were employed: slaves had been introduced in South Carolina the same year in which the first colony

Describe the spot on which the new city was built. — Mention the different countries which sent emigrants to Carolina. — Why did the Huguenots leave France? — From what regions of France did they come? — How were they received? — What is said of their church-going? — What productions were cultivated in South Carolina?

* Bancroft.

was planted. In North Carolina slaves were more slowly introduced, for rice was less cultivated. There the making of tar and turpentine, cutting pine boards, and hunting bears, beavers, and other wild animals, employed the activity of the colonists.

Such was the country, and such the people, which the nobles of England thought to rule without regard either to the rights or happiness of their subjects. But they found it an impossible task, and after twenty-three years of strife the hope of establishing a nobility in America, was forever abandoned.

1702. Spain being at war with England, South Carolina was involved in war with her Spanish neighbors at St. Augustine: she succeeded, however, in defending her territory and keeping the Spaniards and Indians in awe.

1712 to 1715. The Tuscaroras and Yamassees Indians ravaged the settlements of Carolina, burning the villages and scalping the wretched inhabitants. The Yamassees were led on by the Spaniards. The Carolinas united for mutual defence, and headed by such brave leaders as Gov. Moore, Barnwell, and Craven, they marched into the fastnesses of the Indians, and compelled them to yield. The Tuscaroras emigrated to New York, and joined the Five Nations, and the Yamassees were received into Florida.

1719. In 1719, the people of South Carolina, tired of the government of the English proprietaries, petitioned to become a royal province, receiving their governor from the king of England, but electing their own Assemblies. For £22,500 the province was sold, by its owners, to the king, and in 1720 its first royal governor was appointed. North Carolina remained in the hands of the proprietaries until 1729, when it too became a royal province.

The early settlers of Carolina suffered much from Indian wars.

How were the people of North Carolina employed? — In what hostilities were the Carolinas involved? — From what Indian hostilities did they suffer? — Who were sent against them, and with what success? — What became of these tribes? — When, and how, did South Carolina become a royal province? — When did North Carolina become one?

Owing to the injustice and cruelty of Lyttleton, one of the governors of South Carolina, the ill-will of the Cherokees was aroused. Armies were sent against them, three hundred of them were killed in battle, and their villages burned; but for two years the frontiers of Carolina were exposed to all the horrors of Indian surprise and massacre. Among those who defended their country against the Indians, were Francis Marion, Christopher Gadsden, and Henry Laurens, whose names afterwards became famous in the War of Independence. 1759 to 1761.

From the close of the Cherokee war until the passage of the Stamp Act, Carolina, like all the other colonies, was engaged in defending her colonial privileges against the encroachments of royal governors.

GEORGIA.

THE first colony in Georgia was founded by the benevolent James Oglethorpe, who, feeling for the sufferings of the thousands in prison under the severe laws against debtors, determined to found a colony for such in the land of freedom. To this colony were to be added those suffering under religious persecutions.

In the same year which gave birth to George Washington, was planned the last of the Thirteen Colonies, that under him were to battle for their independence. 1732.

A charter, granted by George II., named the country between the Savannah and Altamaha rivers Georgia, in honor of the reigning king, and gave it to Mr. Oglethorpe and other gentlemen, "in trust for the poor." The seal of the new colony represented a group of silk-worms at work, with the motto, "Not for them-

What again roused Indian hostility? — How long did the war last? — Mention some of the colonial officers. — After the Cherokee war how was Carolina engaged? — By whom was Georgia founded, and with what design? — In whose honor was the colony named? — What was the device and motto of the colony?

selves, but for others." This was to assure the colonists of the unselfish motives of the founders of Georgia. It was hoped, too, that the silk-worm would be reared, and the vine cultivated in the new colony.

In November 1732, Oglethorpe, with his little band of emigrants, sailed for America: after touching at Charleston, they proceeded to the mouth of the river, which divides the two States, and ascending it a little distance, founded at Yamacraw bluff, the city of Savannah. The tent of Oglethorpe was pitched under four beautiful pine trees, and for one year he had no other home.

1733.

The Indians received them kindly: "Here is a little present," said one of their chiefs, as he gave them a buffalo-skin, painted on the inside with the head and feathers of an eagle. "The feathers of the eagle are soft, signifying love; the skin is warm, and is the emblem of protection: therefore, love and protect our little families."

Georgia, like the other colonies, received the persecuted of other countries. The Moravians, a gentle, simple body of Christians, dwelling in Austria, were sorely persecuted "for conscience' sake," by the Roman Catholic powers of that country. Driven from their homes in Europe, they were kindly received by Oglethorpe, and amid the pine forests of Georgia founded happy homes, and enjoyed what they chiefly sought, "freedom to worship God." They named their colony Ebenezer, a Bible name, and took for their motto, the text "Hitherto hath the Lord helped us."

About the year 1736, Georgia was visited by John Wesley and his brother Charles. These good men came out as missionaries: they visited the Moravian settlement at Ebenezer, and greatly admired the fervent piety and simple mode of worship which they found there. When John Wesley returned to England, he founded the religious sect known as the Methodists. He was succeeded in his missionary labors in Georgia by George

When, and where, was Savannah founded? — Describe the interview between Oglethorpe and the Indians. — Who were the Moravians? — How were they received, and where did they settle in Georgia? — By what celebrated Christian Ministers was Georgia visited?

Whitfield, the celebrated and eloquent preacher. His preaching is said to have been so wonderful, that people would assemble to the numbers of twenty and forty thousand in the open air, to hear him. He founded an orphan house at Savannah. This was supported for a long time, by the money which his eloquence persuaded people in England and America to give. Whitfield travelled through all the American colonies preaching for this object, and died at Newburyport, in Massachusetts.

Besides the Moravians, Georgia had received a colony of Scotch Highlanders, who founded the town of Darien, on the Altamaha.

Governor Oglethorpe visiting the Highlanders.

Governor Oglethorpe paid them a visit, dressed in the Highland costume: he was warmly welcomed, and this evidence of his care

What is said of Whitfield? — What did he found at Savannah, and by what means did he procure funds for it? — What other colonists came to Georgia? — Where did they settle? — What is said of Oglethorpe's visits to his new colonists?

and interest so won upon their hearts, that they willingly aided him in all his plans for the prosperity and safety of his colony. He visited the Moravians also; praised their industry and agriculture, and attached the hearts of all to him by his kind sympathy.

During the early days of Georgia, there were no slaves in the colony: all the labor was performed by the white colonists. The Moravians felt the traffic in slaves to be sinful, and Oglethorpe declared, that "if negroes should be introduced into Georgia, he would have no further concern with the colony."

1739. In the year 1739, Spain and England being at war, the colonists of Georgia were exposed to attacks from their neighbors of the Spanish town of St. Augustine. Spain claimed the land on which the English had settled. Governor Oglethorpe had prepared for this danger, by securing the friendship of tribes of Indians for seven hundred miles around, and attaching to him most warmly the hearts and services of his own colonists. The pious Moravians were earnest in their prayers for his safety, and the brave Highlanders gathered round him.

1740. Being appointed Commander-in-chief, he determined to commence hostilities by attacking St. Augustine. In this attack he was unsuccessful, owing to weakness of numbers, and sickness among his troops; but he managed to defend the territory of his colony from the Spaniards, and to maintain its boundaries.

1742. In 1742, the Spaniards entered Georgia with a large fleet and force: they landed at St. Simon's Island, where a battle was fought, in which Oglethorpe and his men were entirely victorious; the Spaniards, hedged in by a morass, lost two hundred men, and were obliged to retreat.

The next year, Governor Oglethorpe returned to England, never more to revisit his colony, but leaving behind him that character and those deeds, which the Bible tells us "shall be had in everlasting remembrance."

How did the Georgians regard slavery? — What did Oglethorpe say about it? — With whom were the Georgia colonists involved in war? — How had Oglethorpe provided against this danger? — How did the Moravians aid him? — What is said of the attack on St. Augustine? — Who invaded Georgia in 1742? — What is said of the battle on St. Simon's Island? — What is said of Oglethorpe's character?

After Gen. Oglethorpe's departure, slavery was introduced into his colony. The Moravians yielded their consent very unwillingly, and gave it only because they hoped to do good to the poor Africans, by teaching them Christianity.

For about ten years, the colony remained in the hands of those to whom it was at first committed. It did not prosper. At length, these trustees gave up their charter to the king, and Georgia became a royal province. 1743 to 1752.

Its governor, and most of its officers were appointed by the king, but the people had their own Assemblies, and were jealous of their liberty. At the time of the old French war, the whole population of Georgia numbered but six thousand, about one-third of the present population of Savannah alone.

There were but four or five considerable towns in the province; but Georgia, although the youngest and weakest of the old Thirteen, cordially united with them in the War of Independence.

Although the southern colonies were peopled from the same mother countries as New England and the Middle States, yet, owing to the great variety in motives and character of the early emigrants, and to the difference in climate and productions, they differed widely in their habits and style of living from the people of the northern colonies. They did not settle in towns and villages, but lived on plantations, often scattered miles apart, and chiefly situated on the banks of rivers or on the shores of bays. Here the planters dwelt, surrounded by large households; these consisted, at first, of apprenticed servants, sent out from England and sold to the planters, especially in Virginia, for a certain number of years. They were often prisoners, taken in the civil wars which occurred in England during the reigns of the Stuart kings, or else persons accused of crimes against the government. They

What induced the colonists to consent to the introduction of slavery? — What did Georgia become in 1752? — What liberties did the colonists enjoy? — What is said of the population at the time of the old French war? — What is said of Georgia at the time of the revolution? — How did the early southern colonists differ from those at the north? — How did they live? — Of what did their households consist? — What was the condition of these servants?

were never bound for any great length of time, and when their term of service had expired, could purchase property, and become freemen and land-holders. After the introduction of slavery, the labor of the negro took the place of that of white servants, and at the time of the revolution nearly all the plantations were cultivated by slaves.

We have seen how the early colonists at Jamestown built themselves a Church, and the first laws in Virginia ordered "a room or house to be set apart for God's worship, in every plantation." Each clergyman was to have a glebe of one hundred acres, besides a salary of "the best and first-gathered corn" and tobacco. Travelling was not allowed on Sunday, excepting to and from church. Absence from church was fined, as well as drunkenness and profanity. Many beautiful little churches were scattered throughout the Virginia colony, which contained, at the revolution, fifty-four parishes. Of Pohick Church, near Mount Vernon, erected in 1765, George Washington was at one time a vestryman.

Notwithstanding the laws of Virginia provided for the support of religion, they were rendered nearly ineffectual by the worthless character of many of the clergy, who were sent out to supply the churches. They were men whose daily life was far from recommending the religion which they were sent to preach. There were, it is true, exceptions to this rule, and among ministers and people of all denominations might be found consistent Christians; but these were comparatively few.

The colony of Maryland was founded by Roman Catholics, and religious toleration was practised until 1692, when the Church of England was established, and severe laws were passed against the religion of the planters of the colony. In the Carolinas and Georgia many forms of religion were to be found, although in each the Church of England was at one time established by law. The First Independent Church in Charleston had for its pastor the

Who afterwards cultivated the plantations? — How did the first laws of Virginia provide for religion? — What laws were passed to enforce the keeping of the Sabbath and sobriety? — How many parishes were there in Virginia prior to the revolution? — Mention a particular one. — What was the character of the clergy of Virginia? — What is said of religion in Maryland? — In the Carolinas and Georgia?

son of the celebrated Cotton Mather, of New England. In North Carolina, George Fox founded the Society of Friends; and in Georgia, the no less celebrated founder of the Methodists, John Wesley, was Rector of Christ Church, Savannah. When slavery was introduced into Georgia, masters were obliged to send their negroes to church, under a penalty of five pounds.

In western Georgia and Carolina, just before the revolution, the pious Scotch Covenanters had planted themselves, and among them were to be found many beautiful examples of piety and patriotism. Their Church, in the wilderness, was built of logs, and there, parents and little ones gathered every Sabbath. On week-days was worn the common homespun dress of the settler, but on Sunday were put on the carefully preserved clothing which reminded them of the old country. Women might be seen, with their neatly-fitting garments, snowy linen ruffles, high-heeled shoes, and fur hats, with narrow rims, ornamented with large feathers. They were accompanied by men whose broad-cloth suits and silver knee-buckles showed that they too reverenced the day, and would appear in the house of God in their best attire. The children were taken with them to be catechized after service, and among the God-fearing Covenanters were found some of the noblest spirits of the revolution.

Although Virginia may boast of William and Mary College, founded in 1692, as the second institution for learning in the colonies, yet, neither in this nor any of the southern States do we find, prior to the revolution, the encouragements to education which marked the northern colonies. No common schools were established; and one of the Virginia governors, writing of the condition of the colony in 1671, says: "I thank God there are no free schools nor printing, and I hope we shall not have these hundred years." The first newspaper, the Virginia Gazette, was not published until 1736, and then was under the influence of the

What Society was founded in North Carolina, and by whom? — What law was provided for religious teaching of slaves? — What is said of religion in western Georgia and Carolina? — Describe the Sunday dress of the Covenanters. — When, and where, was the second College in the colonies founded? — What is said of education at the South? — Repeat the remark of a Virginia governor.

government. William and Mary College received from the sovereigns for whom it was named, a tract of twenty thousand acres of land; and duties on tobacco, skins, and furs, were levied for its support. An Indian school was for a time attached to this College, and in later years its library received valuable presents of books from Governor Dinwiddie and Mr. Jefferson.

As early as 1696, free schools were provided by law in Maryland, but were not successfully established until 1704: the first newspaper made its appearance in 1745. In Carolina, parents who could afford to do so, sent their children to England to be educated. Among the Scotch and Moravian population of Georgia, the young were carefully taught by their parents and pastors, especially in religious knowledge. Instruction was also given in Whitfield's Orphan House, near Savannah, which was under the care of James Habersham.

The productiveness of a southern soil tempted the early settlers to industry, and we find large quantities of tobacco raised in Maryland and Virginia; whilst further south, cotton and rice plantations, the cultivation of the vine, and rearing of the silk-worm, occupied the colonists. In the year 1715, Maryland raised thirty thousand hogsheads of tobacco. In Virginia, there were no market-towns, to which produce might be brought for sale: the tobacco, bearing the planter's own mark, was shipped directly from each plantation to his agent in London or Liverpool. The shipping of the produce of the Mount Vernon estate was superintended by the careful eye of the good proprietor himself, and we are told that barrels of flour, bearing the brand of George Washington, of Mount Vernon, were entered in the West India ports without inspection.

In Virginia, each plantation was, as it were, a little empire of its own, carrying on its own manufactures as well as commerce.

What is said of William and Mary College? — What is said of schools in Maryland? — How were the children of South Carolina educated? — How were the Moravians taught? — Where else was instruction given? — What articles were raised in Virginia and Maryland? — What further south? — How did the Virginians ship their produce? — What is said of the flour sent from Mount Vernon?

Around the planter's dwelling were clustered the kitchens, the work-shops, and the stables; and among his negroes were to be found carpenters and blacksmiths, tailors and shoemakers, and the various other tradesmen which the necessities of common life require. All articles of luxury were imported from England.

On the estate, too, were the large buildings in which tobacco was prepared for market. There were mills, too, for the grinding of wheat and Indian corn. Large numbers of the negroes were field-servants. "Their quarter," says Washington Irving, "formed a kind of hamlet apart, composed of various huts, with little gardens and poultry yards, all well stocked, and swarms of little negroes gambolling in the sunshine."

In the Carolinas and Georgia, persevering efforts were made to raise wine and silk. From the latter colony, it was hoped that large quantities of drugs would be exported. In 1734, General Oglethorpe carried to England eight pounds of Georgia silk, and a dress was made of it for the Queen. In 1769, South Carolina was growing rich by the successful cultivation of rice and indigo.

The luxuriant productiveness of the south attracted the admiration of the early colonists: one, writing from Virginia, in 1649, gives a glowing account of its fertility. He speaks of twenty-five sorts of trees, various species of fish, birds, and fowls, the abundance and variety of its vegetables, among which he mentions asparagus and artichokes, and declares that "with Italy it may compare for delicate fruits." Further south, the beauty of the woods was often praised. Long gray moss, hanging in festoons from the oak trees, gave them "a noble, ancient, hoary" appearance; whilst the beautiful magnolia, the jessamine, and countless wild flowers, filled the air with fragrance.

The isolated manner of living in Virginia had not a favorable effect upon the character of the people. No village, with its church, and common school, and training-day, brought them to-

What surrounded the planter's mansion? — How were the negroes employed? — What other buildings were found on an estate? — Repeat the quotation. — What articles did they attempt to cultivate in Georgia? — What is said of the silk culture? — What was successfully cultivated in South Carolina? — Repeat the account given of Virginia in 1649. — What is said of the woods further south? — What effect had their style of living upon the Virginians?

gether; and having but few books and little education, they spent much of their time in low amusements, such as cock-fighting, gambling, and horse-racing. The Virginia planters took the greatest pride and delight in their fine horses, which were imported with great care and cost from England. We are told of one planter, a Randolph, who built for his beautiful horse Shakspeare, a separate stable. In this stable was a little apartment or recess, in which was placed the bed of the negro groom who always slept beside this favorite animal. The towns of Virginia were neither numerous nor populous. Williamsburgh, the capital, contained but two thousand inhabitants, and the people seldom met, save at the lonely parish church or county court-house. But for some time before the revolutionary war, a better state of things existed, and we hear of many a Virginia home where elegance and refinement had spread their genial influence.

Such was the home at Roanoke, where dwelt the descendants of Pocahontas, and the mother of John Randolph taught the future statesman "the Lord's Prayer and the Ten Commandments;" or the elegant mansion at Monticello, adorned by the taste of Jefferson; or the humble farm in Hanover county, where Patrick Henry, neglecting agriculture, gave himself up to the study of ancient and modern history, and his favorite Livy. Such, too, was Chantilly, on the Potomac, where Richard Henry Lee and his brother learned their lessons of eloquence and patriotism.

Above all, such was that home at Mount Vernon, so sacred to the heart of every American. It was an humble dwelling, with its low gable roof and four small rooms. The house (since enlarged) was built on a gentle eminence, and at its base flowed the fair Potomac. Noble forests surrounded it, and a few negro huts were scattered near.

The furniture of the house was simple, but statuary of the world's heroes,—of Alexander and Cæsar, of Charles XII. and

---

What is said of their amusements? — What is said of their love for horses? — Repeat the anecdote. — What is said of Williamsburgh and the scattered population? — What homes are mentioned in Virginia, and what is said of them? — Where did Patrick Henry live, and what is said of his pursuits? — What is said of Chantilly? — Describe the house at Mount Vernon. — Describe its furniture.

the Duke of Marlborough, bespoke the taste of the Father of his country. A bust of the king of Prussia was ordered from Europe. A few years later, and Frederic the Great sent his sword to Washington, with the message, "From the oldest General in Europe, to the greatest General in the world."

Such was Mount Vernon, the humble, but pleasant home, to which Washington ever loved to return when relieved from the cares and toils of the soldier or the statesman.

What is said of Frederic the Great? — What is a natural reflection, when thinking of Mount Vernon?

REVIEW QUESTIONS. — Describe the French attempts at settlements in Carolina. — Sir Walter Raleigh's four expeditions and their results.

Who were the first actual settlers?

Describe the plan of government framed for Carolina in England.

What is said of Locke's constitution?

Give the account of the founding of Charleston. — What is said of emigration to Carolina, and of the Huguenots in particular? — What branches of business were chiefly pursued by the people of Carolina?

In what wars were these colonies involved from 1702 to 1715? — When did they respectively become royal provinces? — What of the Cherokee war of 1759 and 1761?

Relate the particulars of the first settlement of Georgia. — What is said of the Moravian emigrants? — Give the account of Whitfield's visit to their colony. — How did Oglethorpe gain the sympathy of the Highland colony?

In what war did the Georgia colony become involved in 1739? — In what battles did Oglethorpe take the lead, and with what results? — What is said of his character?

From what motive did the Moravians consent to the introduction of slaves into Georgia? — What change was made in the government of Georgia in 1752? — What was the condition of this colony at the time of the revolution, and what part did it then take?

How, and why, did the social and domestic relations of the south differ from those of the north?

What provision was early made in Virginia for the support of divine worship? — What is said of the different forms of religion in Maryland, Georgia, and the Carolinas?

What account is given of the colony of Scotch Covenanters in Georgia and Carolina? — What was the state of education at the south prior to the revolution? — What were the chief productions of the southern States? — How does one writer describe the fertility of the soil and the beauty of the country?

What causes had an unfavorable effect upon the character of the earlier inhabitants of Virginia? — What homes of peculiar excellence are mentioned as existing before the revolutionary war?

CHAPTER XI.

THE STAMP ACT. — THE TEN YEARS PRECEDING THE WAR OF INDEPENDENCE.

"While offering peace sincere and just,
In Heaven we place a manly trust,
That truth and justice will prevail,
And every scheme of bondage fail."

HOPKINSON.

1765. On the 22d of March, 1765, was passed in the English Parliament the first act for taxing the colonies in America. It was brought forward by Lord Grenville, who said that the people of the colonies were British subjects, and therefore ought to pay the tax for the support of the British government. The act was opposed by Mr. Pitt, by Lord Camden, and by every one of the thirteen American colonies. The latter pleaded that England had no *right* to *tax them without their consent*, and as they were not allowed to send representatives to the English Parliament, they could not give their consent. The right of *Taxation without Representation*, claimed by England, was the immediate cause of the War of Independence.

The famous Stamp Act of Lord Grenville, imposed a tax upon all paper used in daily business, such as deeds, agreements, receipts, &c. No such agreement or receipt was to be binding in law, unless the paper on which it was written was first stamped by government, and a sum paid for this stamp by the party using it, varying according to the amount named in the transaction. This practice still continues in England as a source of revenue. It was peculiarly offensive to the colonists, because it was the first act of England imposing a tax upon colonies which had no share in the general government.

When did England first tax the American colonies? — What reason was given for this act? — Who brought it forward, and who opposed it? — Why did the colonies object to the tax? — What right did England claim, and what was the consequence? — What did the Stamp Act impose?

When the news of the Stamp Act reached America it caused great excitement: meetings were held to protest against it, and the colonies united in petitions and declarations, "following one another like a chime of bells."

In the Legislature of Virginia, young Patrick Henry, in the presence of Washington, Jefferson, and Randolph, offered five resolutions declaring "That the General Assembly" of the colony of Virginia had "the sole right and power to levy taxes upon the colony, and that to vest the power in any other body was to destroy British, as well as American, freedom." He spoke eloquently in favor of these resolutions, and in the middle of his speech exclaimed, in clear tones, which startled his hearers, "Cæsar had his Brutus—Charles the First his Cromwell; and George the Third—" 'Treason!' cried some one: 'Treason! Treason!' was shouted from every part of the House. "Henry did not falter," but concluded his sentence, "*may profit by their example.* If THIS be treason, make the most of it."

In Massachusetts, James Otis proposed a Congress of delegates from all the colonies, to meet in New York in October. This proposition was warmly received, although only nine of the colonies were able to send delegates. This Congress drew up a Declaration of Rights and a petition to the king.

Nov. 1st, 1765.

The Stamp Act was to go into operation on the first of November. In Boston, the day was ushered in by the tolling of muffled bells, hanging flags at half-mast, and displaying every sign of a funeral solemnity. The people assembled under an old Elm Tree, thence called "Liberty Tree," made speeches, and hung in effigy Andrew Oliver, the person appointed to sell the stamped paper: they afterwards tore down his house, and obliged him to resign his hateful office.

In Connecticut, hundreds of men "set out on horse-back, with

How was it treated in the Legislature of Virginia? — What did the resolutions of Patrick Henry declare? — What is said of his speech in favor of them? — What proposal was made by James Otis? — How, and to what extent, was it received? — What did the Congress do? — When was the Stamp Act to take effect? — How was the day observed in Boston? — What occurred in Connecticut with regard to it?

eight days' provision, to scour the country" till they should find the stamp-master and compel him to resign. They met him at Wethersfield, on his way to Hartford, but would let him go no further, and at length, after many hours of resistance, obliged him to give up his office and throw his hat into the air, shouting three times, "Liberty and Property."

In New York, the stamped paper was taken into the fort, but the people surrounded it and committed so much violence, that the Governor was glad to resign it into the keeping of the Mayor.

In Maryland and Pennsylvania, the newspapers appeared in mourning, with the most doleful headings, lamenting the badness of the times.

When the British Parliament heard how the first attempt to tax America had been received, very different feelings were excited among the members: some said with Mr. Pitt, "I REJOICE that America has resisted;" others were for crushing the rebellious spirit at once.

1766. Benjamin Franklin was then in England: he was brought before the House of Parliament and questioned. "Do you think," said Lord Grenville, "the people of America would submit to pay the stamp duty if it was moderated?" "No; never. They will never submit to it," he replied. After a long debate, the Stamp Act was repealed; but the Parliament still maintained the RIGHT to tax the colonies. The repeal caused general joy throughout America, though there were many who felt that as long as England claimed the right of taxation, they had very little cause for rejoicing.

1766 to 1775. The nine years succeeding the repeal of the Stamp Act, were marked by various harsh measures on the part of Great Britain. Among others, came the Mutiny Act, a law obliging the colonies to find quarters and supplies for

How was the stamp-master treated? — What was done with the stamped paper in New York? — What notice was taken of the day in Maryland and Pennsylvania? — What was the effect of these proceedings upon the British Parliament? — How was Franklin questioned on the subject? — What was his reply? — What right did Parliament claim after the repeal of the law? — How was the repeal of the law received in America? — What was the Mutiny Act?

large bodies of soldiery, sent to keep them in order. These troops were ordered to New York and Boston: they were hated by the people, and constant riots ensued.

In New York, the soldiers cut down the Liberty-pole, which had been erected when the joyful news of the repeal of the Stamp Act was received: it was put up a second time, and again cut down: three several times these acts of violence were repeated. Skirmishes occurred in the streets, and it was not until the troops had sailed for Boston that order was restored.

In Boston, the presence of the British soldiers caused constant affrays. In one of these, the soldiers fired upon 1770. the populace and killed three men: one of these men was the negro who had excited the disturbance. This deed was called the Boston Massacre, and caused high indignation among the people: they were, however, much in fault, having aroused the attack which ended so fatally.

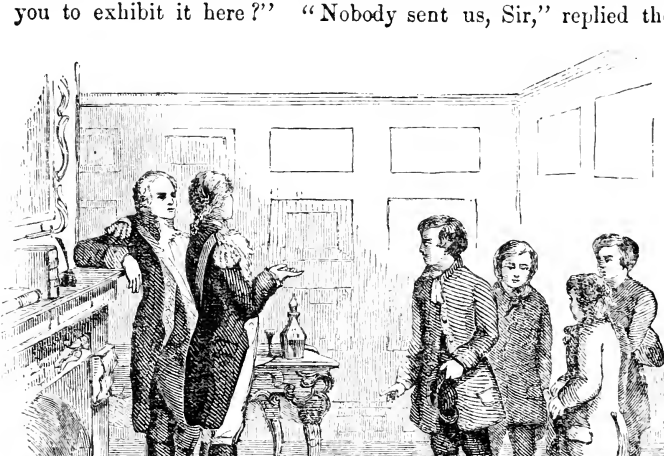
In the course of a few months, the captain who had ordered the soldiers to fire was tried in Boston for murder: notwithstanding the strong feeling of the excited Bostonians against him, two distinguished citizens, John Adams and Josiah Quincy undertook his defence, and he was acquitted.

Even the children of the town were greatly disturbed by the presence of British troops among them.

"In the winter, the boys were in the habit of building little hills of snow, and sliding down them to the pond on the Common, for amusement. The English soldiers, to provoke them, would often beat down these hills. On one occasion, having rebuilt them, and, finding, on their return from school, that they were again demolished, several of the boys determined to wait upon the captain and complain of his soldiers. The officer made light of it, and the soldiers became more troublesome than ever. At last, a meeting of the larger boys was held, and a deputation was

Where were soldiers stationed, and how were they regarded by the people? — What disorders did these soldiers occasion in New York? — What is said of the Boston massacre? — What of the subsequent trial? — How were the children annoyed by the troops? — To whom did they make complaint, and what was the result? — What course did they take next?

sent to General Gage, the commander-in-chief. He asked why so many children had called upon him. "We come, Sir," said the tallest boy, "to demand satisfaction." "What!" said the General, "have your fathers been teaching you rebellion, and sent you to exhibit it here?" "Nobody sent us, Sir," replied the



Boston Boys before General Gage.

boy, while his eyes flashed and his cheek reddened at being accused of rebellion; "we have never injured nor insulted your troops, but they have trodden down our snow-hills, and broken the ice on our skating-grounds. We complained, and they called us young rebels, and told us to help ourselves if we could. We told the captain of this, and he laughed at us. Yesterday our works were destroyed the third time, and we will bear it no longer." The nobler feelings of the general's heart were awakened, and, after gazing upon them in silent admiration for a moment, he turned to

Give the account of their interview with General Gage.

an officer by his side, and said, "The very children here draw in a love of liberty with the air they breathe. You may go, my brave boys, and be assured, if my troops trouble you again, they shall be punished." *

As Parliament still claimed the *right* to tax the colonies, a duty had been laid on glass, lead, tea, &c.: the colonists therefore determined not to import any of these articles, but to manufacture everything they possibly could at home. Franklin had advised them to light the torches of industry and economy, and they went zealously to work.

In Virginia, where Washington proposed the non-importation agreements, articles of luxury were abandoned, and homespun and "thread-bare coats were most in fashion." In Newport and Boston, the ladies spun industriously, and at their tea-drinkings, used the dried leaves of the raspberry plant, which they called Hyperion, instead of the taxed tea imported from England. The feeble manufactories prospered, and were encouraged: "at Cambridge, in 1770, the graduating class took their degrees in home-spun suits." In the same year, all the taxes, excepting the one upon tea, were removed.

In 1773, ships laden with tea were sent to various ports in America, and the Americans determined not to receive it. In Boston, a party of fifteen or twenty men, disguised as Mohawk Indians, on a clear, frosty moonlight night, in December, marched to Griffin's wharf, where the ships were anchored, and boarding them, threw into the sea, in the space of two hours, three hundred and forty-two chests of tea. 1773.

In New York, the same resolution existed, that no tea should be landed. When the ship "Nancy," laden with a cargo, arrived at Sandy Hook, the pilot advised the captain not to proceed any

What did he say of them to one of his officers? — What was the result of the deputation? — What new tax was imposed by Parliament? — How did the colonists act in regard to it? — What was Franklin's advice to them? — How was the tax avoided in Virginia? — How in Newport and Boston? — What is said of the shipment of tea in 1773? — Give an account of the "Boston tea-party." — What is said of a cargo destined for New York?

* Lossing.

further: he took this prudent advice, and shortly after, sailed away with the tea without even an attempt at landing it.

The Philadelphia tea-ship was also obliged to return to England without landing its cargo.

In Charleston, it was stowed in damp cellars and spoiled: not a pound of it was sold.

1774. The conduct of Boston had excited in the British Parliament great indignation, and the harshest measures were now adopted towards this offending town. It was ordered that the General Court should no longer assemble there, but be removed to Salem, and that no vessel should be allowed to enter the port of Boston. This last decree, which was called the "Boston Port Bill," went into operation on the 1st of June. It caused great distress, for many of the citizens were merchants.

Their calamities excited much and noble sympathy throughout the colonies: the merchants of Salem generously offered their port to those of Boston: the people of Georgia sent them sixty-three barrels of rice and "a large sum of money." Scoharie, in New York, sent five hundred and twenty-five bushels of wheat, and from every colony they received aid or sympathy.

Early in 1774, it was proposed that a General Congress, composed of delegates from all the Thirteen Colonies, should meet, to take into consideration the state of the country. This Congress met in Philadelphia, on the 5th of September, 1774, and to it our country sent her best and wisest sons. There came Washington, and Patrick Henry, and John Adams, and many other great and good men.

They met in "the fear of the Lord," and feeling that to be "the beginning of wisdom," they opened their meetings with prayer for divine guidance and support. The first prayer in Con-

---

What of that intended for Philadelphia? — How was the tea treated in Charleston? — How was the conduct of Boston regarded in Parliament? — What orders were given on account of it? — What was the effect of the Boston Port Bill? — How did different parts of the country prove their sympathy for the people of Boston? — What new measure was proposed in 1774? — When, and where, did the Congress meet? — What was the character of its members? — How did they manifest their "fear of the Lord?"

gress was offered by the Rev. Mr. Duché, an Episcopal clergyman. Mr. Adams, in speaking of it, says: "he prayed fervently, and in language sublime and beautiful, for Congress, for the province of Massachusetts Bay, and especially the town of Boston."

This Congress drew up a "Declaration of Rights," an agreement to abstain from all commercial intercourse with England, and a petition to the king. Then, having determined to call another Congress in May of the following year, they broke up on the 26th of October.

Before the second American Congress could assemble, the War of Independence had commenced.

By whom was the first prayer in Congress offered? — What did Mr. Adams say of it? — What acts did this Congress perform?

REVIEW QUESTIONS. — What was the cause of the War of Independence?

When was the Stamp Act passed? — What did it require? — Why was it opposed? — How did the colonists show their disapproval of it? — Give an account of the opposition to it in the Legislature of Virginia.

Give an account of the Congress of 1765. — State the proceedings in different parts of the country when the Stamp Act took effect. — What effect had this opposition upon Parliament? — Why did not the repeal of the law give entire satisfaction?

What was the Mutiny Act? — What violence did it occasion in New York? — What in Boston? — Relate the anecdote of the annoyances committed against the children in Boston, and of their manner of obtaining redress.

What new taxes were imposed by Parliament? — How did the colonists avoid the payment of duties? — Give particular examples.

How did the people of Boston and other places show their opposition to the tax on tea? — How was Boston oppressed in consequence? — How were the sufferings of the people relieved?

When did the first Congress meet, and where? — What of its character, religious services, and acts?

CHAPTER XII.

THE WAR OF INDEPENDENCE.

"Proclaim liberty throughout all the land, unto all the inhabitants thereof." — LEVITICUS, XXV. 10.

THIS war is generally called "the War of the Revolution," because it changed, in many important respects, the form of our government.

It is also, and more properly, called "the War of Independence," because it resulted in the establishment of the united colonies as an independent state among the nations of the earth.

The war opened with the battles or skirmishes of Lexington and Concord.

The people of Boston, as we have seen, were very much excited against the British soldiers, and neither General Gage nor the royal governor did anything to soften these feelings.

1775. On the 18th of April, 1775, General Gage sent eight hundred troops to destroy some ammunition at Concord, a little town about sixteen miles north-west of Boston.

The troops departed at midnight, but notice of their designs was carried to Lexington by two men who secretly left Boston, in order to give Hancock, and Adams, and other distinguished patriots, time to convey themselves to a place of safety. These two men reached Lexington at midnight, and by day-break the minute-men were out upon the village-green, ready to encounter the British troops. The enemy arrived, and a skirmish occurred, in which several men were killed. The troops then pushed on to Concord, where the villagers were also

April 19, 1775.

What names were given to this war, and why? — When, and where, was the first battle of the revolution fought? — Relate the circumstances which led to these skirmishes. — How were the people of Lexington and Concord informed of the approach of the British troops? — Give the account of this expedition and its termination.

prepared to oppose them. Another skirmish took place, and then, the British, finding the militia pouring in from the country around, began to retreat. Their march back to Boston was more disastrous than the skirmishes had been. The country people by this time had assembled from all quarters, and from behind walls and barns, fences and sheds, they opened a destructive fire upon the harassed and wearied troops. Numbers were killed, and so worn out were the soldiers when they reached Boston, that many sunk on the ground from utter exhaustion.

Now the war had begun, and hundreds of brave men gathered from all parts of New England to the neighborhood of or around Boston. They were led by such officers as Putnam, and Pomeroy, and Stark, and Greene, who had learned war in the contests with the French and Indians.

When the news of the battle of Lexington reached Connecticut, and it was felt that the war had begun, that colony despatched a secret expedition to Ticonderoga to seize a quantity of ammunition collected there.

Ticonderoga was a strongly fortified place, situated at the outlet of Lake George into Lake Champlain. It was feared that the Canadian loyalists might seize the ammunition collected there and use it against the colonists; it was therefore important to secure it as soon as possible.

The expedition from Connecticut was joined by the green mountain boys as the Vermont troops were called; and to their leader, Colonel Ethan Allen, a bold spirit, just suited for such a daring enterprize, was given the command of the whole expedition: he was joined by Benedict Arnold, with some men from Massachusetts.

On the night of the 10th of May, they reached the shore opposite Ticonderoga. Taking for their guide a farmer's son, who,

What were the effects of this event upon the people of New England? — Who were the leaders of the New England forces? — On hearing that the war had begun, what expedition was undertaken by Connecticut? — Where is Ticonderoga situated, and why was it important to secure this place? — What forces joined this expedition, and who was their leader? — Describe and date the attack on Ticonderoga.

from associating with the soldiers, knew every secret entrance, the officers, with only eighty-three men, crossed the Lake. Forming his men into three lines, Allen roused them by a few stirring words, and then, as day was breaking, they marched upon the fortress. The frightened sentinel retreated by a covered way, and the Americans following, found themselves within the fortress without striking a blow. Allen mounted to the commander's quarters, and waking him, by three raps upon the door with the hilt of his sword, ordered him "instantly to surrender." Seeing no hope of resistance, he obeyed, and thus the fort, with its guns, muskets, and a large amount of ammunition, fell into the hands of the Americans.

A few days after, they took possession of Crown Point.

The next important event in this first year of the war, was the battle of Bunker's Hill.

After the skirmishes of Lexington and Concord, large numbers of the inhabitants of Boston left the city, and only those remained who were loyalists, that is, friends of the British government, or those to whom General Gage refused permission to depart: these last were chiefly wives and children of the Americans.

The American army of willing and brave, but undisciplined soldiers, were encamped around Boston, at Dorchester, Roxbury, and in strongest force at Cambridge. Their encampment presented a strange appearance. The quarters "were as different in their forms, as the owners were in their dress. Some were made of boards, and some of sail-cloth; some partly of one, and partly of the other. Others were made of stone or turf, brick or brush. Some were thrown up in a hurry; others curiously wrought, with doors and windows, done with wreaths and withes, in the manner of a basket."

From their rude encampment, the Americans watched every movement of the enemy.

What was gained by this expedition? — What was the next important event of the war? — What class of people remained in Boston after the battle of Lexington? — Where was the American army encamped? — Describe the encampment at Cambridge.

The town of Boston is built on a peninsula. Opposite to it, and separated only by a narrow stream, is another peninsula,—that of Charlestown. On the Charlestown peninsula were two hills; Bunker's and Breed's Hill. Bunker's Hill was the highest, but Breed's Hill was nearest the end of the peninsula, and both overlooked the opposite town of Boston.

It was rumored in the American camp, that on the night of the 18th of June, General Gage intended to seize and fortify Bunker's Hill. The Americans determined to anticipate him.

On the evening of the 16th of June, a party of troops, commanded by Colonel Prescott, assembled at Cambridge, ready for the work. After a prayer from the President of Harvard College, they went on their march. Provided with working-tools, muskets, and dark-lanterns, they silently proceeded to the peninsula of Charlestown.

They had been ordered to fortify Bunker's Hill, but on reaching the ground, selected Breed's Hill as a better position. Officers and men, with pickaxes and spades, toiled cheerfully and steadily; and by morning light their "strong redoubt loomed up on the green height before the wondering eyes of the Bostonians, like a work of magic." June 17, 1775.

Very weary were the soldiers; but they lay behind their breastwork, calmly awaiting the British troops which General Gage had sent to dislodge them. They were cheered by the presence of beloved commanders—Prescott, Putnam, and Warren. The British were led on by General Howe.

The battle was bravely fought: as long as the ammunition held out, the Americans drove back the British. It was only when they had expended the last grains of their powder, that they were driven from the redoubt.

Many fell on both sides, but by the Americans the death of Dr. Warren, of Boston, was most deeply felt. Of him Mrs. Adams

Describe the position of Bunker's and Breed's Hills. — Why did the Americans determine to fortify Bunker's Hill? — When, and in what manner, was the work undertaken? — Why did they fortify Breed's Hill, and when was the work completed? — Who were the commanders on each side? — Give some account of the battle. — Whose death was deeply felt by the Americans?

writes, "Not all the havoc and devastation they have made, has moved me like the death of Warren. We want him in the Senate; we want him in his profession; we want him in the field. We mourn for the citizen, the senator, the physician, and the warrior." Gen. Warren was the last man who left the redoubt at Breed's Hill, and was but a short distance from it when killed by a musket-ball.

The result of this battle encouraged the colonists and alarmed the British, by convincing them that the enemy was not so feeble as they had imagined.

While these events were going on at Boston, the second Continental Congress had met in Philadelphia, and had appointed George Washington, of Virginia, Commander-in-chief of the American army.

He received his appointment with the dignity and modesty which marked all his actions. He refused all pay, saying, "I will keep an exact account of my expenses. Those, I doubt not, they will discharge, and that is all I desire."

General Washington proceeded at once to the performance of his duty. He reached Cambridge on the evening of the second of July. On the morning of the third, the troops were drawn up on the Common: General Washington, surrounded by his officers, and standing under the large tree, since known as the Washington Elm, drew his sword, and addressing a few words to the soldiers, took the command of the continental army.

It numbered fourteen thousand men, but many of these were unfit for service, and all required drilling. Many of them had left their farms on the first impulse, but receiving little pay, and being unused to the hardships of war, some grew weary and deserted. All the troops were badly clothed, without proper tents, and greatly in want of ammunition. When Washington took the command, he found but nine cartridges to each soldier.

Repeat Mrs. Adams's remarks. — What was the effect of this battle? — During this time, what was taking place at Philadelphia? — How did General Washington receive his appointment? — Where, and when, did he enter upon the command? — What was the number and condition of the American army?

Such were some of the difficulties which tried the soul of this great man. They lasted through the whole war, but his patience and patriotism never surrendered to them. With admirable judgment, he always did the very best thing that could be done at the time and under the circumstances.

The year 1775 closed with the unfortunate attack on Quebec.

Congress wished very much to secure to the colonists the province of Canada. To accomplish this, two expeditions were to march from different points, and unite at Quebec, the capital of the province, situated on the river St. Lawrence.

General Montgomery's army, ordered by Congress, was to ascend Lake Champlain, take Montreal, and then descend the river to the capital. General Arnold's army, sent by Washington from the camp at Cambridge, was to proceed up the Kennebec, across the forests of Maine, to the Chaudiere, a river which empties into the St. Lawrence opposite Quebec.

At first, General Montgomery was successful: he captured Montreal and other British posts, but his men grew discontented, and deserted; the winter was very severe, the men were badly clothed, provisions failed, and it was with a mere handful of troops that on the first of December he appeared before Quebec.

Arnold, meanwhile approaching from an opposite quarter, had performed a dreadful march through the wilderness. Through the snows of pathless forests; carrying their boats on their backs; often in danger of perishing among the rapids; reduced almost to starvation, these brave men in November reached the shores of the St. Lawrence. To the astonished Canadians their appearance seemed miraculous.

Finding himself unable to attack the city with his diminished force, Arnold retired twenty miles up the St. Lawrence, and there awaited the approach of Montgomery. When the latter arrived, the united forces besieged Quebec for three weeks, and at length determined to attempt to take it by assault.

How did Washington meet the difficulties of his position? — When was the expedition against Quebec undertaken? — What was its object? — To what Generals was it committed? — What part was assigned to each? — Describe Montgomery's progress. — Describe Arnold's progress. — What occurred on their arrival opposite Quebec?

Dec. 31, 1775. At dawn, on the last day of the year 1775, both American generals, but from different quarters, attacked the city. It was a stormy morning; the snow was falling fast, "and the wind piling it in drifts." Through all, with desperate courage, Montgomery led his men, as he supposed, to victory, but it proved to death: he was among the first who fell.

Arnold, ignorant of the sad fate of Montgomery, pressed on, but was soon disabled by a severe wound, and carried from the field. General Morgan then took the command, but courage was unavailing: the British troops surrounded them in greater numbers, and the division was forced to surrender. The prisoners were treated kindly. Arnold took command of the American troops who had effected a retreat, and recrossing the river, entrenched himself a few miles from the town. Thus closed the first year of the war.

1776.

The year 1776 witnessed the signing of the "Declaration of Independence," but the military events of the year were not very inspiriting, although it opened favorably.

Washington, with his troops at Cambridge, had kept the British shut up in Boston. During the month of March he prepared to bombard it, by erecting batteries on the various heights in the neighborhood, particularly at Dorchester, from which a fire was opened upon the town. General Howe, who had succeeded General Gage, became alarmed for the safety of the city, and determined to evacuate it. This was accordingly done on the 17th of March. The British troops embarked, and in a few days sailed for Halifax.

On the 20th, Washington, at the head of his army, marched into

When, and under what circumstances, was the attack made? — What befell the American commanders, and what was the result of the attack? — What rendered 1776 so important a year? — Describe Washington's operations at Cambridge. — What did the British do?

Boston. They entered amid shouts of joy; but their spirits were filled with sadness when they beheld the ruined condition of their beautiful town; the capital and pride of New England. The churches had been desecrated; the Old South changed into a riding-school, and others converted into barracks or torn down for fuel: Faneuil Hall had been used for a theatre; valuable libraries had been burned; handsome dwellings injured, and trees cut down. Everything bore a sad witness to the wanton and wicked passions excited during a time of war.

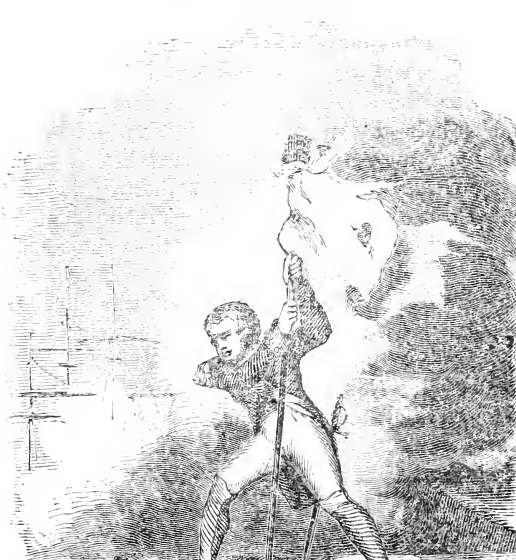
Washington, having garrisoned Boston, repaired to New York, for he feared the British on leaving Halifax would attack that city.

Before attempting New York, the British sent Sir Peter Parker and Sir Henry Clinton to the south, to make an assault on Charleston. General Lee and Colonel Moultrie made every exertion for its defence. They built, on Sullivan's Island, in the harbor, a fort of palmetto wood. This wood is so soft that cannon or musket balls sink into it without doing much damage. The attack on Fort Sullivan was commenced on the 28th of June. It lasted ten hours, and ended in the repulse of the British.

Great bravery was shown on both sides. Once, during the action, a British ball broke the flag-staff on the fort, and the colors fell over the parapet on the beach beyond. A sergeant, named Jasper, leaped over the breastwork, picked up the flag, and, unharmed by the fire from the fleet, sprang back into the fort, and amid the shouts of applause from his comrades, planted the flag of Carolina again upon the fort. The next day, Governor Rutledge presented him with a sword, and offered him a lieutenant's commission. The latter, Jasper, refused, saying, "I am not fit to keep officers' company; I am but a sergeant."

General Clinton and Sir Peter Parker, finding they had lost many men, and that no prospect remained of reducing the fort, abandoned the attempt and sailed for New York.

What was the condition of Boston when Washington entered it? — State Washington's next object. — What threatened Charleston, South Carolina? — Describe its defence. — Relate the attack on Fort Sullivan. — Repeat the story of sergeant Jasper. — What was the next object of the British fleet and force?



Sergeant Jasper planting the Flag of Carolina on the ramparts of Fort Moultrie.

About this time occurred the event which makes the year 1776 so memorable to Americans.

For many months, the minds of the colonists had been drawn to the thought of a separation from Great Britain; but it was not until the 7th of June, 1776, that a formal proposition to this effect was made in the Continental Congress, then assembled at Philadelphia. On the day named, Richard Henry Lee, of Virginia, presented the following resolution: —

"That these united colonies are, and of right, ought to be, free and independent States; and that all political connection between

What subject engaged the minds of the colonists at this time? — Where was Congress assembled? — Repeat Richard Henry Lee's resolution.

us and the State of Great Britain is, and ought to be, totally dissolved."

It was determined to defer the consideration of the subject until the first of July. In the meantime a committee, of which Mr Jefferson was chairman, was appointed to prepare the form of a Declaration, which, when the matter came to be discussed, should be presented to Congress.

Mr. Jefferson wrote the Declaration of Independence. It commences thus: — "When, in the course of human events, it becomes necessary for one people to dissolve the political bands which have connected them with another, and to assume, among the powers of the earth, the separate and equal station to which the laws of nature and of nature's God entitle them, a decent respect to the opinions of mankind requires that they should declare the causes which impel them to the separation." — Then follows a detail of the wrongs which induced the people of the American colonies to declare themselves independent. The document closes with the words, "For the support of this Declaration, with a firm reliance on the protection of Divine Providence, we mutually pledge to each other our lives, our fortunes, and our sacred honor."

Assembled in the old State-House, with closed doors, on the first, second, third, and fourth days of July, the Declaration was seriously considered, paragraph by paragraph, and at length, at two o'clock in the afternoon of the Fourth of July, was adopted by an unanimous vote of the Continental Congress. "The final decision was announced by Secretary Thomson to the assembled body in Independence Hall. It was a moment of solemn interest; and when the secretary sat down, a deep silence pervaded that august assembly. Thousands of anxious citizens had gathered in the streets of Philadelphia, for it was known that the final decision was to be made on that day. From the hour when Congress convened in the morning, the old bell-

July 4th, 1776.

Who prepared the Declaration of Independence? — Repeat the extracts from it. — When was it discussed and adopted? — What took place on its announcement?

man had been in the steeple. He placed a boy at the door below, to give him notice when the announcement should be made. As hour succeeded hour, the old man shook his head, and said, 'They will never do it! they will never do it!' Suddenly, a loud shout came up from below, and there stood the boy, clapping his hands, and shouting, 'Ring! Ring!' Grasping the iron tongue of the old bell, backward and forward he hurled it a hundred times, its loud voice proclaiming 'Liberty throughout all the land, unto all the inhabitants thereof.'* The excited multitude in the streets responded with loud acclamations, and with cannon-peals, bonfires, and illuminations, the patriots testified their joy that night in the quiet city of Penn." †

The Declaration of Independence did much to animate the hearts of the people, and to support their spirits during the disastrous military campaign which followed. By this act the colonies became henceforth "The United States of America."

In the month of July the British fleet left Halifax, and meditating an attack on New York, entered the harbor, and landed troops on Staten Island. Here General Howe was joined, in a few days, by Sir H. Clinton and Sir P. Parker, from the south.

Washington had fortified the strong points commanding the city. In August, the British and Hessians landed on Long Island, and attacked the division of the American army posted at Brooklyn. In the battle which followed, the Americans were defeated, and during the night effected a retreat to New York. Leaving the city in the hands of the British, the Americans continued their march to the north end of the island. At Haarlem a skirmish was fought, in which they were partially victorious: the retreat then continued through West-

Sept. 1776.

What was the general effect of the Declaration of Independence? — How was New York threatened? — What battle was fought, and with what result? — Describe Washington's retreat to White Plains, and mention the skirmishes that occurred?

* This bell, now preserved in Independence Hall, was sent out from England in 1752, and recast in Philadelphia in 1753. Engraved on the rim was the text: "Proclaim liberty throughout all the land, and to the inhabitants thereof." It was a singular coincidence that this bell should be the first to peal out a note of joy on the Declaration of Independence.

† Lossing.

chester County to White Plains, where they made a stand, encountered the British, and were again defeated. After losing Fort Washington, the capture of which he witnessed from Fort Lee, on the opposite side of the Hudson, Washington, pursued by Cornwallis, retreated through New Jersey and crossed the Delaware with his diminished and disheartened army, early in December.

Every preparation was made for the defence of Philadelphia: Congress adjourned to Baltimore.

The British, under Lord Cornwallis, had pursued Washington to the banks of the Delaware, but could not cross it for want of boats, and awaited the freezing of the river, believing that the city would then fall an easy prey into their hands. The knowledge that Congress had departed, and that there were many loyalists within the town, increased this confidence and rendered them carelessly secure. Their troops were posted through New Jersey in small divisions, and at scattered stations. One of their officers boasted that he could secure New Jersey "with a corporal's guard." Cornwallis had returned to head-quarters at New York.

Washington determined to take advantage of this unwise security, and to attack one of their divisions, a body of Hessians, stationed at Trenton, under Colonel Rahl. He chose Christmas night for the enterprise, for he knew the German custom of keeping that day with feasting and carousals, and believed that an attack then would be more than usually unexpected.

His army, composed of two divisions, was to march upon Trenton by separate roads. At night, amid floating ice and a storm of snow and sleet, they crossed the Delaware at McKonkey's ferry, and marching all night, reached the town by day-light. The surprise was complete. Dec. 28, 1776.

Colonel Rahl, it is said, had been invited to a Christmas supper, and was engaged in card-playing, when a loyalist, aware of the Americans' approach, sent him a note. The negro servant to

Describe his retreat from White Plains to the Delaware. — What city was next threatened? — What prevented an attack? — What made the British too confident of final success? — What advantage did Washington take of this confidence?

whom it was given, at first refused to disturb his master, and when prevailed upon to hand it to him, Colonel Rahl, whose turn it was to deal, and who was excited by wine, thrust it into his pocket. A few hours later, and the sound of the drum and the musket aroused him to a sense of his danger.

Hastily mounting his horse and rallying his men, he endeavored to oppose the Americans; but the panic-stricken soldiers were flying in every direction. He was himself mortally wounded, and carried from the scene. The Hessians surrendered themselves prisoners of war.

With this brave achievement the year 1776 closed hopefully.

What time did he choose for this enterprise? — Why did he select it? — Describe the passage of the Delaware. — Were the Hessians prepared for the attack? — What was the result?

REVIEW QUESTIONS. — Describe the skirmishes at Lexington and Concord. — The attack on Fort Ticonderoga. — The army about Boston. — The battle of Bunker Hill.

Who was appointed to the chief command, and what was the condition of the country at this time?

Relate Montgomery's and Arnold's expeditions to Quebec, and the result.

What led to the evacuation of Boston? — Describe the condition in which the Americans found the town.

Relate the particulars of the attack on Fort Moultrie.

Relate the events which led to the Declaration of Independence. — Describe the scene at the time and place of its adoption.

Give an account of the battle of Brooklyn, and of the events which followed.

What brilliant achievement closed the campaign? — Describe it.

CHAPTER XIII.

THE WAR OF INDEPENDENCE (Continued.)

"The land is holy where they fought,
And holy where they fell;
For by their blood that land was bought
The land they loved so well."

1777.

At the opening of the year 1777, there were in America three British armies: one of thirty-five thousand men, under General Howe, whose head-quarters were in New York; another of seven thousand in Canada, under Sir Guy Carleton, who in March was superseded by General Burgoyne; and a small detachment of about five thousand in Rhode Island, commanded by General Prescott.

The war during this year was carried on chiefly in the States of New York and Pennsylvania. We shall first follow through the year the proceedings of the army which we left, at the close of 1776, in New Jersey, under General Washington; and afterwards relate the important military events which, during this year, occurred in New York.

On New-Year's day of 1777, Washington was at Trenton, preparing for the approach of Cornwallis, who, having heard of the capture of Colonel Rahl, had returned to New Jersey, and was marching rapidly towards the scene of the disaster. Jan. 1 & 2, 1777.

A little stream divides the town, and Washington, with his men, lay encamped on the southern side of it. Cornwallis arrived about sunset and endeavored to cross the stream, but the Americans repulsed him, and the armies rested on opposite banks of the creek, awaiting the approach of day.

Mention the disposition of the British forces in America at the opening of 1777. — Where were the operations of the war carried on during this year? — Mention Washington's position at the beginning of this year. — Who threatened him with an attack? — Describe the position of the two armies at Trenton.

The British army was fresh and strong, that of the Americans was worn out and undisciplined, and they feared the result of the next day's encounter. A council of war was held, in which it was determined to abandon their post during the night, march rapidly to Princeton, and surprise the British there. The greatest objection to this plan was that the ground, owing to a thaw, was so soft that cannon could not be dragged over it; but, whilst the council were debating the matter, the wind suddenly changed, and the weather became so cold, that in two hours the ground was frozen hard.

Camp-fires were now lighted on the American side of the stream to deceive the British, and rapidly and stealthily the army marched off for Princeton. It was a ten miles march, over roads so rough, that they did not reach the outskirts of the village until dawn.

The British were taken by surprise, and in the skirmish which followed, were defeated. A ball fired at Nassau Hall, the College in Princeton, is said to have gone directly through a portrait of George II., destroying the picture without injuring the frame. Washington afterwards gave the trustees of the College two hundred and fifty dollars to repair the injury done to the building, but they expended it for a full-length portrait of the General, which hangs in the very frame from which the head of the king was carried away by the cannon-ball.

In this battle fell the brave General Hugh Mercer, a loss which was felt deeply by the Americans.

General Cornwallis was much surprised on awaking at Trenton, to find the camp-fires of the Americans still burning, but not a soldier, tent, or cannon to be seen. The firing at Princeton soon made him aware of the direction the missing enemy had taken, and he commenced a hasty pursuit, but could not arrive in time to prevent the victory which Washington had gained.

What was the condition of the American army? — Owing to these circumstances, what was resolved upon? — What obstacles retarded its accomplishment? — How did they effect their purpose? — Describe the attack on Princeton. — What loss befell the Americans in this battle? — What course did Cornwallis pursue, when he found the Americans had escaped him?

On leaving Princeton, the first design of the Americans had been to press on to New Brunswick and capture the stores which the British had collected there; but as Cornwallis, with fresh troops, was in close pursuit, the plan was abandoned, and changing the direction of their march, they advanced towards Morristown, where Washington soon after took up his winter quarters. In May, he removed to Middlebrook.

No event throughout the entire war had a more cheering effect upon the desponding hearts of the Americans, than these successes in the Jerseys.

They occurred at perhaps the darkest hour of the struggle, when even tried patriots had well-nigh given up to despair, and they restored a confidence which was never again lost.

In July, the hearts of the Americans were cheered by the news of an exploit performed by William Barton, a militia colonel, of Providence, Rhode Island.

It will be remembered that a British force was quartered on Rhode Island, under the command of General Prescott. The disposition of this officer was harsh and tyrannical, and his presence, with that of his troops quartered among them, was felt by the inhabitants to be most oppressive. They desired earnestly to get rid of him, and William Barton formed the hazardous design of surprising and capturing him in his quarters.

General Prescott was then living at a Quaker's house, about five miles out of Newport. On the night of the tenth of July, Barton, and a few bold followers, in whale-boats with muffled oars, crossed Narraganset Bay, and landed on the island. They were unobserved, although so near were the British guard-boats, that they heard the sentinel's cry, "All's well!" In two divisions, they silently marched towards the house: the sentinel challenged the first party that approached, but they seized and silenced him. Then entering the house, Barton enquired of its owner, who was sitting up and reading, for General Prescott's

After attacking Princeton, what design had the Americans? — Why did they not pursue it? — Where did Washington take up his head-quarters? — How was the British commander in Rhode Island regarded? — To what design did this lead? — Describe Barton's expedition for the capture of Prescott.

room. The man pointed upwards, and Barton, with four men and a strong negro, rushed up stairs. The door was locked, but the negro dashed against it with his head, and burst it open. General Prescott, supposing them to be robbers, started up and seized his watch. The next moment, Barton's hand was laid on his shoulder, informing him that he was a prisoner, and he was told that silence was his only safety. Quietly and quickly he was hurried to the boats and across the bay. Not a word was spoken until they landed at Warwick Point: then, General Prescott broke the silence, by saying to Colonel Barton, "Sir, you have made a bold push to-night;" to which the latter merely replied, "We have been fortunate."

A detachment of General Howe's army, whose head-quarters were in New York, had, under Lord Cornwallis, been threatening the Americans in New Jersey. Washington, from his camp at Middlebrook, so disheartened the enemy, that by the end of June they had given up New Jersey in despair.

Lord Cornwallis joined General Howe in New York; and Washington watched with no small anxiety the next movement of the enemy, believing that an attack on the city of Philadelphia was intended.

In this he was not mistaken, for in July the British fleet, commanded by Lord Howe, and having on board eighteen thousand men, under his brother, Sir William Howe, sailed for the Delaware. Not being able to ascend this river, on account of the obstructions thrown into it by the Americans, they proceeded to the Chesapeake, and ascending this Bay, landed at Elk Head, not far from Wilmington, and about thirty miles south-west of Philadelphia.

As soon as Washington learned this movement of the British, the American army marched towards Wilmington. On opposite banks of the Brandywine creek the two armies were encamped for

Who commanded the army threatening New Jersey? — When was Lord Cornwallis driven from New Jersey? — What did Washington fear would be the next movement of the British? — Was this movement made, and by whom? — What difficulty met the British fleet? — Where were the British troops landed? — To what point did the Americans advance?

several days. On the eleventh of September, the British crossed the stream at Chad's Ford, attacked and defeated the Americans.

The latter retreated first to Chester, and then to Philadelphia, Washington still hoping to save the city. But this he was unable to do, and finally, on the twenty-sixth of September, it fell into the enemy's hands. The main body of their army was posted at Germantown, six miles north of Philadelphia. Washington retreated about twenty miles up the Schuylkill.

Hearing that the British force at Germantown was somewhat weakened, he planned an attack upon it. The Americans, in four divisions, were to advance by different routes; but their march was rendered slow by the roughness of the roads, and the approach of the division under Wayne and Sullivan was discovered at Chesnut Hill. They succeeded in driving the British from this post, but a party, under Colonel Musgrove, took refuge in a strong stone house, known as Chew's House, and detained Wayne's division a long time, in a vain endeavor to force them from their refuge.

Other troops pressed on: they drove back the British brigades, and for a time victory seemed secure; but owing to the failure of some of the divisions to move to the attack as ordered, in the battle which ensued the Americans were obliged to retreat with considerable loss.

They retired to White Marsh, in the plain beyond Chesnut Hill.

Whilst here, an attempt was made by the British to surprise Washington in his camp; but the design was providentially frustrated by the heroism of a Quaker woman, named Lydia Darrach.

Lydia lived in Philadelphia, in a house recently standing in Second street, known as the Loxley House. Here the Adjutant General

---

Where was a battle fought, and with what result? — Did the British accomplish the object of the expedition? — Where, and how, was their army posted? — Where was the American army quartered? — Describe the plan of the attack on Germantown. — What difficulties and opposition were encountered? — What was the result of the battle of Germantown? — To what place did the Americans retreat? — What attempt was made upon Washington at White Marsh? — Who became aware of this design, and by what means?

Lydia Darrach.

of the British army had his quarters, and here consultations were frequently held by the commanding officers. One evening, the General ordered Lydia to prepare a room for the reception of some gentlemen who were to meet him on business; adding, in a decisive tone, "and be sure, Lydia, your family are all in bed at an early hour." His manner impressed her with the feeling that something of importance was intended, but she obeyed his orders; her family were asleep, and she, after admitting the officers, retired without undressing to her own bed.

The feeling that evil designs against her country were plotting, made her so restless, that at length she arose, and stole barefooted

to the door of the room in which the council was sitting. There she heard an order from General Howe for the troops in Philadelphia to march out and surprise and attack Washington's camp at White Marsh.

At early dawn Lydia arose, and with a prayer for guidance and protection, left the city on pretence of going to Frankford Mills for flour. Leaving her meal-bag at Frankford, she pressed on through the snow, for it was a cold December morning, towards Germantown. Meeting an American officer, she told him the precious secret, and then, hurrying back to Frankford, took up her flour, and reached Philadelphia without any suspicions being aroused. Dec. 1777.

That night she saw the troops depart, on what she felt, was a fruitless errand; and so it proved, for in a few days they returned, having accomplished nothing, and not a little discomfited. The Adjutant General of course called Lydia Darrach to account. He asked if "any of her family were up on the night previous to the day on which the troops left the city?" she replied, "No, they all retired at 8 o'clock." "It is very strange," said the officer; "you, I know, Lydia, were asleep, for I knocked at your door three times before you heard me, yet it is certain we were betrayed: — on arriving, we found Washington so prepared at every point, that we have been compelled to march back without injuring our enemy, like a parcel of fools."

Whilst at White Marsh, Washington felt great anxiety for the little American flotilla which still held possession of the Delaware, and also for the forts on the shore, which protected it: these were Fort Mercer, at Red Bank, on the Jersey shore, and Fort Mifflin, on an island nearly opposite.

The British, having possession of Philadelphia, determined to dislodge their enemy from these posts on the river. A body of Hessians was sent against Fort Mercer, but Colonel Greene de-

How did Lydia attempt to inform Washington, and with what success? — What was the result of this expedition? — Describe the British officer's interview with Lydia on their return. — To what points was Washington's attention now directed? — What attempts were made by the British against these points?

fended it with great bravery, and the enemy were repulsed with the loss of their leader, Count Donop. Fort Mifflin sustained a siege of six days, making a brave but desperate defence. On the night of the sixteenth of November, no hope remained of longer holding the fort; the garrison burned the barracks, and escaped to Red Bank. That, too, was evacuated, and the garrison which had so bravely defended these forts, rejoined Washington.

A few vessels of the fleet escaped up the river to Burlington, and seventeen were abandoned by the crews, and burned. In December, Washington, breaking up his quarters at White Marsh, retired to Valley Forge, on the Schuylkill, about six miles above Norristown.

We shall now leave Washington with his suffering and desponding army, in their huts at Valley Forge, and go back to the more cheering events, which, during the summer of 1777, took place in New York.

It will be remembered, that a British army was stationed in Canada, under General Carleton. This was the force, which, at the close of 1775, had defended Quebec against Montgomery and Arnold, and which, finally, in the spring of the following year, succeeded in driving the Americans from Canada. In March of 1777, the English government determined to increase this army, and employ it in a design, which, if successfully accomplished, they hoped would end the war in America.

British forces already occupied Rhode Island and New York, and by employing this Canadian army to seize the posts on Lake Champlain and the Hudson, all communication between New England and the Middle States would be cut off, and the separated sections, it was hoped, would fall an easy prey into the hands of the British.

What befell them? — What became of the American flotilla? — Where did Washington quarter his troops during the winter of 1777–8? — By whom was the British army in Canada commanded, and what had it accomplished? — What great enterprise was planned for this army?

In the spring of 1777, about the time that Washington was compelling the enemy to abandon New Jersey, General Burgoyne arrived to take command of the forces in Canada. General Carleton, though hurt by the ingratitude of the English government, in thus depriving him of the chief command, nobly aided Burgoyne in all his preparations, and by June, a large army was collected at St. Johns, near the outlet of Lake Champlain.

A detachment of two thousand men, under Colonel St. Leger, were ordered to ascend the St. Lawrence, capture Oswego, on Lake Ontario, and Fort Schuyler (Rome), on the Mohawk, and join General Burgoyne at Albany, when the latter should have carried his conquests to that point. It will be seen how, in the providence of God, these designs against our country were defeated.

As soon as Congress was made aware of the impending danger, it prepared for defence. General Schuyler, a brave, skilful, and much beloved officer, was sent to take command of the forces at the north: he found the army in a destitute condition and few in number, yet his courage did not fail, and he prepared to dispute every inch of ground with the advancing enemy.

General Burgoyne left St. Johns in June, and by the first of July, had swept Lake Champlain, and appeared before Ticonderoga. That fortress was abandoned, and the Americans fled by night, retreating towards Fort Edward, on the Hudson, where General Schuyler was posted. They were met at Hubbardtown by a party of the enemy, and a battle ensued, in which the Americans were defeated. In the course of their retreat, they felled trees, and threw as many obstructions as possible in the way of the British advance; but at length, in July, General Schuyler was obliged to leave Fort Edward, and retreat further down the river. July, 1777.

While General Burgoyne was within a few miles of Fort Edward, an event occurred which has thrown a melancholy interest

Who was appointed to the chief command of the British in Canada? — To what point, and for what purpose, was a detachment of this army ordered? — Who was sent to command the American forces at the north, and how did he enter upon his work? — Describe General Burgoyne's progress to Fort Edward.

around this spot. A young lady, named Jane M'Crea, the daughter of a Presbyterian minister, was visiting at the fort. Her brother, hearing of the approach of the British, urged her to leave it, and join him a few miles below. This she delayed to do, for, being in the house of a lady friendly to the British, and herself engaged to an officer in Burgoyne's army, she apprehended no danger. At length, her brother sent her an express command to join him, and she promised to do so the following day, in a batteau which was to take a few families down the river.

July 27, 1777. Early in the morning, some Indians were seen stealing towards the house: the family, in alarm, fled to the kitchen, and endeavored to let themselves down through a trap-door into the cellar. But the Indians discovered Miss M'Crea and her friend, Mrs. M'Neill, and dragged them forth. Miss M'Crea was placed on horse-back, but Mrs. M'Neill, being unable to ride, was hurried along between the Indians, and the two parties fled towards Fort Edward. Mrs. M'Neill arrived first, and shortly after came the other party with scalps, among which she recognized the long glossy hair of her young friend.

The Indians denied having massacred Miss M'Crea, and said she was killed by a bullet, fired by a party who had pursued them from the fort. The body of the poor girl was found near a spring, and the Americans, bearing it with them, evacuated the fort on Burgoyne's advance, and fell down the river. Her brother received not the sister whom he expected, but a mutilated corpse. Such are some of the horrors of warfare; dreadful enough in any civilized nation, but more awful still, when the passions of the savage are aroused and employed.

Aug. 1777. General Burgoyne took possession of Fort Edward, but he was greatly in want of military stores, and hearing that the Americans had deposited some at Bennington (now in Vermont), he despatched Colonel Baum, with a large force, to seize them.

In the meantime, the approach of Burgoyne along their western

---

Repeat the story of Miss M'Crea. — How did Burgoyne attempt to procure military stores?

frontier, had alarmed the New England States, and a large force was collecting in New Hampshire, under the command of Major Stark. This detachment reached Bennington just in time to encounter the force sent against that place. On the sixteenth of August, a severe battle was fought there, in which the Americans were victorious, taking Colonel Baum and seven hundred prisoners, besides large quantities of arms and ammunition. During the battle, Major Stark is said to have animated his soldiers by exclaiming, "See there, men: there are the red-coats. Before night they are ours, or Mary Stark is a widow!"

A few days after the victory at Bennington, came news from the Mohawk, of an equally cheering character. It will be remembered that while Burgoyne advanced along Lake Champlain, Colonel St. Leger was sent against Oswego and Fort Schuyler. His numbers increased on the march by the addition of Indian allies. With a formidable army, having taken Oswego, he appeared before the little fort on the Mohawk, and demanded its surrender. Aug. 1777.

There were seven hundred men within the garrison, and they had brave hearts and a brave commander, who, declining the summons, resolved to hold out to the last. General Herkimer, with the militia of the surrounding country, attempted to succor Col. Gansevoort, at Fort Schuyler, but his troops fell into an ambush of British and Indians, and were defeated, with dreadful slaughter: Colonel Herkimer was himself mortally wounded.

Fearful now was the condition of the little garrison within Fort Schuyler, but there were bold as well as brave hearts there, and it was determined to make a desperate effort to obtain relief. One dark, stormy night, Colonel Willetts, with a single companion, stole from the fort. Creeping on their hands and knees through a morass, they reached the river, which they crossed on a log. In

What preparations were making in New Hampshire to oppose the British? — Mention the battle of Bennington. — Describe St. Leger's progress to Fort Schuyler. — Describe the condition of the garrison at Fort Schuyler. — What became of the force raised by General Herkimer for its relief? — Relate Col. Willetts' adventures.

the dark, tangled forest, they lost the narrow path, and were obliged to lie still until dawn: then, pursuing a zigzag track, and often, Indian fashion, walking through the bed of a stream, to elude pursuit, they reached a place of safety, and, mounted on swift horses, sped to the camp of General Schuyler, at Stillwater.

Here they made known the danger of their friends, and begged assistance. General Arnold, with a few hundred men, volunteered to march to their relief. He dared not wait for any reinforcements, lest his arrival should be too late to save the fort, nor did he dare, with so small a force, to encounter the larger army of St. Leger. He therefore hit upon a stratagem by which he made the British believe his army to be much larger than it really was. Among the prisoners taken by the Americans, was a half-witted boy, who was condemned to death: his mother came to Arnold and begged his life.

Arnold promised it, on condition that Hon Yost (for that was the boy's name), should go to the British commander, and make him believe that the force approaching to the relief of Fort Schuyler was very large. This Hon Yost promised and performed. He rushed into St. Leger's camp, as if in great terror, showed his coat pierced with musket-balls, and told him that the Americans were coming rapidly to the rescue, and that he had but escaped with his life. When asked their numbers, he shook his head mysteriously, and pointed upward to the leaves.

St. Leger was now greatly alarmed; the more so as the Indians who had joined him were deserting in great numbers. He abandoned the siege, and the panic spreading rapidly, the whole army fled to their boats, and returned to Canada. To Colonel Gansevoort and the beleaguered garrison, their departure seemed almost miraculous, until a few hours after, when Hon Yost made his way into the fort and told them the secret of their rescue.

Aug. 22, 1777.

This joyful intelligence reached the American camp about the 26th of August, but General Schuyler was no longer in command.

What relief did he obtain from the camp at Stillwater? — What stratagem did Arnold employ to deceive St. Leger? — With what success?

Brave, true, and unselfish, he still had enemies. They took advantage of his forced retreat before General Burgoyne, to prejudice the mind of Congress against him. His command was taken from him and given to General Gates. With the nobleness belonging to his character, General Schuyler offered the aid of his counsel to his successor.

The success of the Americans at Bennington and Fort Schuyler, depressed the spirits of the British army; Burgoyne, fearing a retreat as the death-blow to his hopes of fame, as well as displeasing to the government in England, pressed forward from Fort Edward to Stillwater, a little village on the Hudson, about nine miles south of Saratoga. Here the Americans were encamped, and here, on the nineteenth of September, was fought one of the severest battles of the war. Arnold was the leading spirit of the action, and displayed great bravery. The British lost nearly five hundred men, without being able to drive the Americans from their position.

After the battle of Stillwater, the armies occupied their former positions, actively engaged in strengthening their lines, and preparing for another encounter.

This took place on the seventh of October, and proved still more disastrous to the British. They lost more than four hundred men in killed and wounded; one of their best and bravest commanders, General Frazer, was killed, and other valuable officers.

The evening following the battle, General Burgoyne felt his position a dangerous one, and determined to retreat, by night, towards Fort Edward. General Gates commenced a pursuit on the morning of the tenth, and overtook the enemy at Saratoga. Burgoyne's situation was now desperate: the Americans, encouraged by success, were on the alert; the workmen whom Burgoyne had

---

Why was General Schuyler displaced from the command of the American army? — Who succeeded him? — What effect had the American successes upon the British army? — How far did Burgoyne advance? — State the result of the battle of Stillwater. — When was a second battle fought, and with what result? — To what point did Burgoyne retreat? — Describe Burgoyne's position at Saratoga.

sent to clear the roads, were driven back into his camp; a large victorious army was behind him, and escape seemed hopeless.

The British General held a council of war on the thirteenth of October, in which it was agreed that proposals for an honorable surrender should be made to General Gates. These were made, and after a few days' deliberation, the terms of surrender were settled, and the seventeenth of October fixed as the day. On the night of the sixteenth, Burgoyne received intelligence that the British General, Clinton, had taken Forts Clinton and Montgomery, on the Hudson, and that another party had advanced up the river, and burned Kingston. This news encouraged Burgoyne, and made him hesitate to sign the articles of surrender. General Gates, aware of the danger of delay, sent him word, the following morning, that unless the articles were immediately signed, he would open a fire upon him. The signature was no longer withheld, and, soon after, the ceremony of surrender took place.

To spare the feelings of the enemy as much as possible, General Gates ordered all his own men within the camp, and there was but one American officer present at the scene. The British marched out in companies to a green in front of the old fort, and by the command of their officers, laid down their arms and emptied their cartridge-boxes. This ceremony over, the two Generals were introduced, and dined together. After dinner, General Burgoyne, in presence of both armies, delivered his sword to General Gates, who immediately restored it to him.

Oct. 17, 1777.

The captured army numbered over five thousand men. They were marched to Boston, whence they were to be sent to England, but suspicion of an intention on the part of the British to break the treaty signed at Saratoga, being aroused in Congress, they were not permitted to embark. Four thousand of them were afterwards sent to Virginia. At the close of the war, many of the German troops settled in America, and became useful citizens.

Under these circumstances, what proposals did he make? — What afterwards led him to waver? — What course did General Gates pursue? — Describe the ceremony of surrender. — What became of the captured British army?

Washington at Prayer.

The heart-cheering news from the north came like a gleam of sunshine across the dark prospects of suffering, which closed the year 1777 for the army at Valley Forge. It was during these trying hours, that the leader of our armies, knowing that it is the Lord "who girdeth with strength unto the battle," sought Divine guidance and support for himself and his country. The person at whose house Washington was quartered when at Valley Forge, relates that one day, whilst walking in the woods, he was attracted by a voice, as if in supplication. He drew near, and saw Washington kneeling in prayer.

April and May, 1777.

Besides the operations of the main armies during the campaign of 1777, several predatory expeditions were undertaken by both British and American parties. One of these, conducted by the British under General Tryon, laid the town of Danbury, Connecticut, in ashes. Another, of the Americans, under Colonel Meigs, surprised the British stores at Sag Harbor, on Long Island. They destroyed the stores, captured ninety prisoners, burned twelve vessels, and escaped without the loss of a single man.

What predatory expedition was undertaken by the British in Connecticut? Relate the expedition against Sag Harbor and its results.

REVIEW QUESTIONS. — Describe the surprise and attack on Princeton. — What effect had these successes in the Jerseys upon the spirits of the Americans? — Describe the capture of General Prescott. — When, and why, did the British abandon New Jersey, and what was their next design?

What led to the battle of the Brandywine? — Describe the retreat of Washington and the subsequent position of both armies.

Describe the attack on Germantown and the result. — Relate the story of Lydia Darrach. — What is said of Forts Mifflin and Mercer? — Relate the attacks upon them and the results.

Relate the designs of Burgoyne's army from Canada. — What preparations were made to oppose him? — Describe Burgoyne's advance to Fort Edward.

Repeat the story of Jane M'Crea. — Describe the battle of Bennington. — Describe St. Leger's advance on Fort Schuyler. — Relate the story of its rescue?

Describe the battles of Saratoga and Stillwater, and the result. — Relate the circumstances attending the surrender of Burgoyne.

What is said of Washington at Valley Forge?

CHAPTER XIV.

THE WAR OF INDEPENDENCE (Continued.)

"What boding terrors gloomed the threatening hour,
When British legions, arm'd with death-like power,
Bade desolation mark their crimson'd way,
And lured the savage to his destin'd prey."

1778.

FRANCE and England, though at this time at peace, had been at war for centuries. It was natural, therefore, that in the war of our Independence France should look with a friendly eye on those who were fighting against her enemy. Feelings of sympathy had induced many Frenchmen, and among them, the young Marquis de la Fayette, to leave their own country, and come over to fight in the cause of America. Arms too and ammunition had been secretly sent to our aid by the French; and now, when the news of the capture of Burgoyne reached Europe, the French government decided to come out openly as the friend of America, acknowledge her independence, and help her to fight for it. A treaty to this effect was made between the two countries, February 6th, 1778.

England was much alarmed on finding that the colonists had obtained the aid of so powerful an ally, and three commissioners were sent over to induce the colonies to return to their allegiance. But Congress refused to listen to any terms which did not acknowledge our Independence or recall the British fleets and armies from our shores. One of the commissioners attempted to bribe General Joseph Reed to persuade Con- June, 1778.

What motives led France to favor America? — What aid had been received from that country? — What effect had the capture of Burgoyne upon the French government? — When was the treaty made? — What effect had this upon England, and what attempt at conciliation was made? — With what success? — Instance the patriotism of Joseph Reed.

gress to give them a favorable hearing. He was offered ten thousand pounds, but the honest patriot replied, "*I am not worth purchasing; but, such as I am, the King of Great Britain is not rich enough to buy me!*" In October, the commissioners returned to England.

A French fleet being daily expected in the Delaware, Sir Henry Clinton, who had succeeded Sir William Howe, determined to evacuate Philadelphia, and proceed across New Jersey to New York. Washington, aware of his intentions, sent forward a large division of his army, under General Lee, to pursue the British and give them battle. The enemy were overtaken at Monmouth Court-House; but General Lee, dismayed at the sudden attack of the British, ordered a retreat: General Washington, arriving just after the retreat commenced, reprimanded General Lee for his conduct, and, inspiring the soldiers with fresh courage, led them against the British. It was the twenty-eighth of June: the day was excessively hot and sultry, and the battle lasted until night. During the day, a soldier having charge of a cannon, was shot down at his post: his wife, a brave young Irish woman, was at the time bringing him water from a neighboring spring. She saw her husband fall, and heard his commander order the piece to be removed from the field: instantly dropping her pail, she seized the rammer, and stationing herself by the gun, performed her husband's duty with great skill and courage throughout the action. The soldiers gave her the nick-name of Major Molly, and being presented to General Washington the day after the battle, she received a sergeant's commission and half-pay, for life.

When night closed upon the scene, Sir Henry Clinton, taking advantage of the darkness, continued his retreat towards New York, and the Americans remained masters of the field. General Lee was tried by a court-martial for disobedience of orders, and disrespect to his commander-in-chief. He was suspended from service a year, and did not again join the army.

What induced Sir Henry Clinton to evacuate Philadelphia? — What was General Lee ordered to do? — What was General Lee's conduct at Monmouth? — What effect did the arrival of Washington produce? — Relate the story of Major Molly. — What was the result of the battle? — On what charges was General Lee tried, and what was his sentence?

The French fleet, which had been sent to America under Count D'Estaing, disappointed the hopes of the people. Philadelphia having been abandoned by the British, the French Admiral sailed for New York, intending to attack that city; but as the pilots refused to bring the heavy French ships into the harbor, the attempt was abandoned, and the fleet sailed for Newport. July, 1778.

To drive the British out of Newport was a favorite project in New England: Count D'Estaing was therefore cordially welcomed, and a large land force raised to co-operate with him. The troops under Generals Sullivan, Greene, and the Marquis de la Fayette, were to march down from the north end of the island, whilst the fleet attacked the city from the harbor. Aug. 1778.

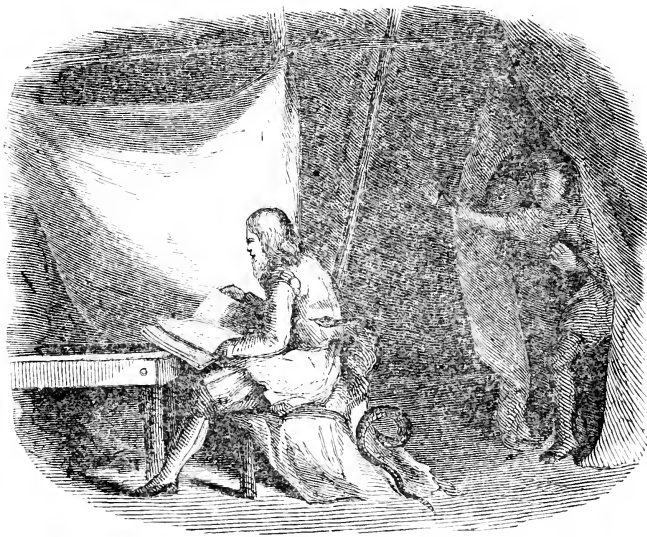
Unfortunately, before the plan could be carried out, the Count D'Estaing, hearing that Admiral Lord Howe had sailed from New York, was tempted by the hope of a naval victory to put to sea, leaving the land forces to take care of themselves. A storm separated the two fleets, disabling several of the French ships. When the Admiral again appeared in Newport harbor, instead of aiding the troops, who, expecting his return, had continued their operations, he sailed to Boston to refit his fleet. The attack on Newport was of course abandoned. After a slight engagement at Quaker Hill, about eleven miles north of the city, the Americans made a skilful retreat.

One of those sad stories, of which, alas! war furnishes so many, will close the history of 1778.

In Pennsylvania, on the banks of the Susquehanna, is the beautiful valley of Wyoming. The first white man who penetrated its shades was the Christian Missionary, Count Zinzendorf, the founder of the Moravian Society. He went to preach the tidings of salvation to the Indians; but the suspicious savages placed no

By whom was the French fleet commanded, and what was its design upon reaching America? — Why was this design abandoned? — What was the next object? — What was the plan of attack on Newport? — What diverted Count D'Estaing from his object? — What was the result of the naval engagement? — What became of the attack on Newport? — Where is Wyoming? — By whom was it first visited? — Relate the adventures of Count Zinzendorf.

faith in the words of the white man, and believing only that he coveted their lands, they resolved to murder him. Stealing silently to his tent, which he had pitched at the foot of a sycamore tree, they were struck with feelings of awe whilst they looked upon the calm and benevolent face of the old man as he sat reading by the fire. How was their awe increased when they beheld a rattlesnake, which the heat of the fire had drawn from its hole, glide harmlessly over him. They doubtless felt as did the savages whom St. Paul found at Melita, "who, when they saw no harm come to him, changed their minds, and said he was a god." So these Indians believed that the Moravian Missionary was under



Count Zinzendorf and the Indians.

the special care of the Great Spirit: their feelings of hatred were changed to love and reverence; they listened to his teachings, and a successful mission was founded among them.

But in a few years the Moravian Missions were scattered by an Indian war, and a new race of white settlers peopled the valley. The villages which now clustered there were the fruits of the busy enterprise of Connecticut. The principal of them was named Wilkesbarre, in honor of John Wilkes and Colonel Barrè, two warm friends of America, who in the English Parliament had opposed the taxing of the colonies. Peaceful and happy were these settlements, when, in 1778, the storm of war burst upon them.

July, 1778. Early in July, a band of Tories (as residents in America who took sides with the British were called), under Gen. John Butler, and a party of Indians, drew near the valley. Wyoming had sent the bravest of her men to the general army; but old men and boys armed for her defence. Already two forts had been taken by the invaders, and the surrender of the others was demanded. A small force was assembled under Colonel Zebulon Butler, and "looking to their dependent wives, mothers, sisters, and little ones, they took counsel of their courage, and resolved to give the enemy battle." They were defeated and driven back: a horrible scene followed. The forts were surrrendered under a promise from Colonel John Butler, that life and property should be spared; but he was unable to check the savage Indians, who burned, plundered, and murdered, rendering the valley a scene of desolation and ruin. The few wretched inhabitants who saved their lives, escaped only by a painful flight to the settlements on the Lehigh and Delaware.

"On Susquehanna's side, fair Wyoming!
Although the wild flower on thy ruined wall
And roofless homes a sad remembrance bring
Of what thy gentle people did befall,
Yet thou wert once the loveliest land of all
That see the Atlantic's wave their morn restore."

What became of the Moravian Missions? — What white settlers next inhabited the valley? — What was their principal settlement, and why so called? — What enemy threatened Wyoming in the summer of 1778? — Why was it in a defenceless position? — Who attempted its defence? — Mention the events which ensued. — Repeat Campbell's lines.

1779.

Weary of the fruitless effort to conquer the New England and Middle States, the British now sent a large force to the south, where they knew the American forces to be weakest. Amid the plantations and rice-fields of the southern colonies, the slave population was large, and not enlisted as soldiers; tories too abounded, so that, had not the patriots there been of the bravest and the best, such men as Moultrie and Rutledge, and Sumpter and Marion, the struggle for Independence might have been as hopeless as it was long and trying.

At the close of 1778, Savannah had been taken, then Sunbury and Augusta. In fact, at the opening of 1779, Georgia was in the enemy's hands. The patriots fled into Carolina; the royal governor was restored, and for a brief space the British could boast once more a royal province in the colonies.

May, 1779. Encouraged by these successes, the victorious General Prevost appeared in Carolina and demanded the surrender of Charleston. The American General Lincoln was marching towards the Savannah to attempt the recovery of Augusta, when this news reached him. He immediately hastened to return. In the meantime, Governor Rutledge had animated the people to great exertions for the defence of the city. They were in much peril. General Prevost's force was large, and during the night of the eleventh of May, they hourly expected that he would open a cannonade upon the town. Great was their joy at early morning to see the enemy retreating, and to welcome General Lincoln, whose timely return had saved them from an attack.

Extreme heat prevents the active operations of armies at the

Toward what quarter did the British now turn their arms? — Why was the south comparatively defenceless? — Name some of the patriots there. — What was the condition of Georgia early in 1779? — What city was threatened in May of this year? — What American General advanced to its relief? — Who made preparations for defence within the city? — How were they saved from attack?

south during the summer. Nothing further was attempted until the autumn of this year.

In the meanwhile, the miserable ravages of war were carried on by the troops remaining in the northern States. An expedition sent from New York burned Portsmouth and Norfolk in Virginia, whilst others, under General Tryon, ravaged and burned Norwalk, Fairfield, New Haven, and other pleasant towns and villages of Connecticut on Long Island Sound. From one of these expeditions, General Putnam, who commanded the American troops in Connecticut, narrowly escaped being made prisoner.

He was at Horse-neck with only one hundred and fifty men, when General Tryon was discovered approaching the place with nearly fifteen hundred. Hastily forming his men, General Putnam met the British, but overwhelming numbers put his troops to flight, and he was himself so closely pursued, that but for a deed of desperate daring he would have been captured. Wheeling his horse from the main road, when his pursuers were almost upon him, he galloped down the zigzag path of a precipice, leaving his astonished enemy to wonder at the daring of the fugitive who had so unexpectedly escaped.

From his marauding expedition in Connecticut General Tryon was brought back by the news of the capture of Stony Point. This exploit, one of the most brilliant in the history of the war, was planned by Washington and executed by General Wayne. Stony Point was a stronghold on the west bank of the Hudson. It was important because, with Verplanck's Point opposite, it commanded King's Ferry, and by this ferry the great road between New England and the Middle States crossed the Hudson. On three sides Stony Point was protected by the river, and on the fourth, it was only approachable by a causeway over a morass.

On the evening of the fifteenth of July, General Wayne formed his army about a mile and a half below the Point. All the dogs in the neighborhood had been previously

July, 1779.

Mention some of the foraging expeditions at the north this year. — Relate the escape of General Putnam at Horse-neck. — What recalled General Tryon from Connecticut? — Describe the position and consequent importance of Stony Point. — Who attempted its capture, and what means did he employ?

killed to prevent their giving the alarm. The countersign had been obtained from a negro, who was in the habit of entering the garrison to sell fruit, and strangely enough, this night it consisted in the words, — "The fort's our own." Towards midnight, the troops were put in motion: the sentinels at the causeway receiving unsuspiciously the watchword from the negro-guide, were seized and silenced before they could give the alarm. Then, in two separate columns, the Americans marched on to the fort. After a short but severe resistance, Colonel Johnson, with his garrison, surrendered prisoners of war. Before day-break, General Wayne had sent to the commander-in-chief the following report: —

"Stony Point, 16th July, 1779.

"DEAR GENERAL: —

"The fort and garrison, with Colonel Johnson, are ours: our officers and men behaved like men who are determined to be free.

"Yours, most sincerely,

"ANTHONY WAYNE."

The Americans were not able to retain Stony Point, as Sir Henry Clinton immediately sent large reinforcements up the river. The works, however, were destroyed, and the cannon and military stores removed, so as to render its possession of little use to the British.

Shortly after the attack on Stony Point, Major Henry Lee surprised the garrison at Paulus Hook (now Jersey City), and took one hundred and fifty-nine prisoners, having lost only two of his own men in the attempt.

Purposing to revenge the cruelties of Wyoming, Cherry Valley, Minnesink, and others, General Sullivan, in the harvest months of July and August, entered the beautiful country lying between the head-waters of the Susquehanna and the Genessee, and made it a desolate wilderness. Gardens and grain-fields, and fruit-

What was the result? — Repeat General Wayne's despatch. — What became of Stony Point? — What other British garrison was surprised about this time? — By whom, and with what success? — Where was General Sullivan ordered, and for what purpose?

orchards, and flourishing villages, were laid waste. Tories and Indians were driven from their homes, only to return, when the storm was over, with feelings of more bitter hatred, and to inflict, to the end of the war, the same cruelties which had made their own dwellings desolate.

To return to the south. The British possession of Georgia was a subject which greatly disturbed the people there, and when Count D'Estaing appeared with his fleet and proposed an attack on Savannah, he was joyfully received, and a large land force, under General Lincoln, prepared to co-operate with him. The Count approached the city, and demanded its surrender to the king of France. The British General, Prevost, requested a truce, which was granted. By the time the truce was ended, he was prepared to defend the city, and refused to surrender it. Nothing now remained for the French and Americans, but to endeavor to take it by siege. The next seventeen days were spent in digging trenches, raising gun-batteries, and approaching nearer and nearer to the British works. Count D'Estaing grew impatient, and fearful of autumn storms and the rumored approach of a British fleet, he told General Lincoln that they must either take the place by assault, or abandon the attempt. The assault was resolved, and on the morning of the ninth of October, the combined armies entered Savannah. For five hours the battle raged within the town. At length, the allies were driven back, and compelled to retreat, leaving among the dead the brave Polish Count Pulaski, Sergeant Jasper, and many other valuable officers and men. The close of the year saw Georgia still in the hands of the British.

Sept. 4, 1779.

Sept. 2 & 3, to Oct. 5.

Oct. 9.

During July of 1779, General Washington's head-quarters were at West Point. The following extract from a playful letter written by him to Dr. Cochran, may give some idea of, perhaps,

What was the result of this expedition? — In September of this year what was proposed by Count D'Estaing? — Who co-operated with him? — Mention the proceedings of Count D'Estaing. — How long did the allied armies besiege Savannah? — What other propositions were made by Count D'Estaing? — Which course was adopted?

the *best* style of living of the Commander-in-chief of the American army during the war: —

"West Point, 16th August, 1779.

"DEAR DOCTOR: —

"I have asked Mrs. Cochran and Mrs. Livingston to dine with me to-morrow; but am I not in honor bound to apprize them of their fare? As I hate deception, even where the imagination only is concerned, I will.

* * * * * * * * * *

"Since our arrival at this happy spot, we have had a ham, sometimes a shoulder of bacon, to grace the head of the table; a piece of roast-beef adorns the foot; and a dish of beans or greens, almost imperceptible, decorates the centre.

"When the cook has a mind to cut a figure, which I presume will be the case to-morrow, we have two beef-steak pies, or dishes of crabs, in addition, one on each side of the centre dish, dividing the space, and reducing the distance between dish and dish to about six feet, which, without them, would be nearly twelve feet apart.

"Of late, he has had the surprising sagacity to discover that apples will make pies; and it is a question, if, in the violence of his efforts, we do not get one of apples, instead of having both of beef-steaks.

"If the ladies can put up with such entertainment, and will submit to partake of it on plates, once tin, but now iron (not become so by the labor of scouring), I shall be happy to see them; and am, dear Doctor, Yours ——"

Repeat the extract from a letter of General Washington.

REVIEW QUESTIONS. — What nation made a treaty with the United States? — Relate the results?

Describe the battle of Monmouth. — Relate the attempt on Newport, and its failure.

Relate what is said of the early history of Wyoming. — Deseribe the events which befell Wyoming during this year.

What is said of the success of the British at the south? — Relate the attack and defence of Charleston.

What is said of the marauding expeditions at the north? — Repeat the story of Putnam's escape.

Describe the attack on Stony Point. — Describe Sullivan's expedition. — Describe the attack on Savannah.

CHAPTER XV.

THE WAR OF INDEPENDENCE (Concluded.)

"Our band is few, but true and tried.
Our leader frank and bold,
The British soldier trembles
When Marion's name is told."

BRYANT.

1780.

ON the twelfth of May, 1780, the city of Charleston fell before the combined fleet and army of the British commanders, Sir Henry Clinton and Admiral Arbuthnot. May, 1780.

Its brave defender, General Lincoln, hoping for aid from abroad, and unwilling to accede to General Clinton's terms, had maintained a siege of forty days. At length, the storming of the city was begun by land and sea. The ninth and tenth of May were "fearful nights in Charleston. The thunder of two hundred cannon shook the city like an earthquake, and moon and stars were hidden by the lurid smoke. Shells May 9, 10, 1780. were seen coursing in all directions, some bursting in mid-air, others falling upon houses and in the streets, and in five different places the flames of burning buildings, shot up from the depths of the city."* Unable to hold out any longer, General Lincoln surrendered, and on the morning of the twelfth of May the British entered the town. Shortly after, Sir Henry Clinton sailed for New York, and Lord Cornwallis took command of the British army at the south. May 12, 1780.

General Lincoln, now a prisoner in Charleston, was succeeded in his command by General Gates, the fortunate victor of Sara-

---

Who commanded the American forces at Charleston, and how long did he sustain a siege? — Describe the attack on the ninth and tenth of May. — When did the surrender take place? — Who remained in command of the British forces, and who succeeded General Lincoln?

* Lossing.

toga. He advanced through the Carolinas and encountered the British at Camden, on the Wateree river. Here a battle was fought, in which the Americans were defeated with great loss, and Cornwallis, with his victorious troops, pushed on towards the north, hoping to drive them entirely from Carolina. He advanced as far as Charlotte. There he heard that Major Ferguson, whom he had sent to ravage the country west of the Wateree, had been attacked by the Americans at King's Mountain, himself killed, and his eleven hundred troops made prisoners. Cornwallis thereupon retraced his steps, and took up his quarters at Winnsboro, in South Carolina.

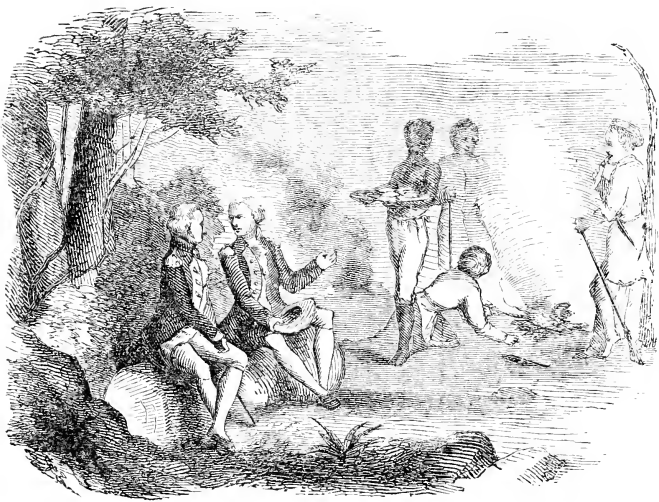
Aug. 16, 1780.

Oct. 7, 1780.

Notwithstanding these partial successes, the hopes of the patriots had been well-nigh crushed, were it not, that from the banks of the Pedee and Catawba, the Santee and the Broad, came news of the brilliant exploits of Marion, Sumpter, and Lee, to cheer their hearts, and convince the British that though Charleston had fallen, and they had conquered at Camden, Carolina was not yet all their own. During the summer and autumn of this year, these partizan leaders called around them the daring spirits of their native districts, and by bold and active movements often surprised and cut off detachments of Cornwallis's army. So sudden and adroit were the surprises, and repeated at different points in such quick succession, that Tarleton gave to Marion the name of the "Swamp Fox."

Marion's head-quarters were on Snow Island, at the junction of Lynch's creek and the Pedee. It abounds in beautiful forest trees, draped with the long grey moss of the southern woods. To this camp a young British officer was conducted on official business, and Marion invited him to dine. When he saw roasted sweet potatoes served on a piece of bark and nothing besides, he exclaimed, "Surely, General, this cannot be your ordinary fare!"

Where did the next encounter between them take place, and with what result? — What was Lord Cornwallis's object? — How was he checked? — What cheered the Americans? — Describe these exploits? — Where were Marion's head-quarters? — How did he entertain a British officer?



Marion entertaining the British Officer.

To which Marion replied, "Indeed it is, and we are fortunate on this occasion, entertaining company, to have more than our usual allowance." Sumpter and Lee were equally self-denying, brave, and vigilant, and the united exertions of such leaders saved the south from despair. Toward the close of this year, 1780. General Greene took command at the south.

We must now turn to the north and read a dark page in the history of the American Revolution: — the treason of General Benedict Arnold.

We have met him at Quebec, at Fort Schuyler, and at Saratoga, performing deeds of the bravest daring, and, perhaps, have looked upon him as one of the heroes of the war. Now we must follow him through different scenes.

General Arnold, who was still suffering from the wounds re-

What had hitherto been the character of Arnold?

ceived at Saratoga, was ordered, when the British left Philadelphia, to that city. Shortly after his arrival, he married Miss Shippen, a Tory lady, and lived in a style of extravagance, which awakened the suspicions and displeasure of the Pennsylvania Legislature.

Jan. 1780. He was tried by a court-martial on the charge of procuring public money by fraudulent means. The court sentenced him to be reprimanded by the commander-in-chief. This sentence was executed by General Washington with the utmost delicacy and gentleness; but the bad passions of Arnold were fully roused, and for money's sake, and for revenge, he determined to sell his country.

He knew that West Point, a strong fortress of the Hudson Highlands, about sixty miles above New York, was deemed so important, that the British would be willing to give almost any sum for its possession. He applied, therefore, for the command of this post, which included the stations on the river from Fishkill to King's Ferry. General Washington, unsuspicious of evil, though surprised at his request, granted it, and he was ordered to West Point, August 3d, 1780.

Aug. 3, 1780.

For many months Arnold had corresponded with the British, and he now signified to Sir Henry Clinton his willingness to place West Point in their hands. It was planned that a British fleet should ascend the river, and General Arnold, having previously weakened the garrison and removed a link from the chain which stretched across the river, should deliver up the fortress on pretence of being unable to defend it. To secure this plan, it was important that a personal interview with Arnold should be held, and Adjutant General Major André was named by Arnold as the person with whom he would confer. André left New York for this purpose, instructed by Sir Henry Clinton, *not* to change his dress, nor to go within the American lines, nor to receive papers. Every one of these instructions the force of circumstances com-

What was his style of living while in Philadelphia? — On what charges was he tried? — What was the sentence of the court-martial? — What was its effect upon Arnold? — For what post did he apply, and why? — What did Arnold propose to Sir Henry Clinton? — Mention the details of the plan. — Who was sent to confer with Arnold, and what orders did he receive? — How were these orders disobeyed?

pelled him to disobey. A part of the interview was held at Smith's House, near Haverstraw (within the enemy's lines); he was unable to regain the "Vulture," the vessel which had brought him up the river, and was obliged to return by land, in disguise, with the plans of the fort and other papers, concealed in his boot.

André pursued his fatal journey as far as Tarrytown, without interruption. Near that village he was waylaid by three countrymen, to whom, mistaking them for British, he expressed the hope that they belonged to his party. On their demanding "which party," he incautiously replied, "the lower one," and revealed to them that he was a British officer. Dreadfully agitated on discovering his mistake, he showed them General Arnold's pass, and urged bribes and entreaties to induce them to let him go. But these honest patriots were not to be won, and they proceeded to search his person. The papers were found concealed between the stocking and the foot, and securing these, they carried them, with their prisoner, to Colonel Jameson.

In the meanwhile, Arnold had returned to his head-quarters at the Beverly House, opposite West Point.

The day fixed for his deed of guilt was the twenty-fourth of September, but by the providence of Him who "bringeth the wicked devices of men to naught," our country was saved from her secret foe. On the twenty-fourth Washington returned from Hartford, whither he had gone on a visit to Count Rochambeau. He had ridden that morning from Fishkill, and as he approached General Arnold's head-quarters, he turned aside to inspect some works on the river-bank, at the same time sending word to Mrs. Arnold not to wait breakfast for him, as he should be there in a short time. The party sat down without him. Presently a letter was brought to General Arnold: he opened it, confidently expecting that its contents would inform him that the British were advancing up the river. What was his

Sept. 24, 1780.

What befell André on his journey towards New York? — Relate his interview with the three countrymen. — What was the result of it? — When did Washington reach Arnold's head-quarters, and what was fixed for that day? — How did Arnold learn that his treason was discovered?

consternation when he read these words, from Colonel Jameson (an American officer, commanding one of the garrisons below), "Major André, of the British army, is a prisoner in my custody." Controlling his agitation as far as possible, he told his guests that important business required his attention at West Point, and taking a hasty leave of his wife, whom he left fainting on her chamber-floor, he rushed down a by-path to the water, entered his boat, and bidding the boatmen row with all their might, reached the British sloop Vulture, in safety.

"Whom can we trust now?" was the sad exclamation of Gen. Washington, when, a few hours later, the proofs of Arnold's treason were placed in his hands.

Arnold escaped in safety to the British at New York. André was taken to West Point, and afterwards brought to Tappan, in New Jersey, where a military board was appointed to examine the case. Every effort (excepting the only one which would have availed, the surrender of Arnold) was made by the British to save him, and great sympathy was felt for him in the American army; but it was deemed necessary, by the laws of cruel war, that he should suffer death as a spy. This sentence was executed at Tappan, October 2d.

Young, brave, and accomplished, the death of Major André makes us feel something of the evils of war, the requirements of which are so dreadful, even when undertaken in a righteous cause.

Washington's visit to Hartford had been for the purpose of conferring with Count Rochambeau, who had been sent by the French government with a force of six thousand men, to the aid of America. Admiral Ternay, with a second French fleet, brought over these land forces.

At the close of this year, the British had two large armies in America. One, under Sir Henry Clinton, whose head-quarters were at New York; and another, in the south, under Lord Cornwallis. A detachment of Sir Henry Clinton's army, under Gen.

Describe the scene that followed and his escape. — Repeat Washington's remark. — What was done with André? — For what purpose had Washington gone to Hartford? — Describe the position of the British armies at the close of 1780.

Knyphausen, had been ravaging New Jersey, and another, under Arnold, was threatening Virginia. The American forces were stationed at Morristown, New Jersey, and on the Hudson, where General Washington had his head-quarters. Their French allies were at Newport, fearing an attack upon that town; and a division, under Count Lauzun, was quartered in Connecticut.

1781.

On the north-west frontier of the Carolinas, at a place, called from its advantages for raising cattle, the Cowpens, was fought the first battle in the campaign of this year. General Greene, soon after taking the command of the southern army, had sent General Morgan to protect the western districts of Carolina, and watch the movements of the British. To intercept Morgan, Lord Cornwallis despatched General Tarleton, with a force of eleven hundred men. This officer had proved a formidable enemy to the partizan leaders of Carolina; his vigilance and activity rivalled that of Sumpter and Marion, and had afforded him frequent opportunities of cutting off parties of the Americans.

He advanced towards Morgan's camp expecting to overtake him on a retreat, and was surprised, therefore, to find him at the Cowpens, ready for battle. Confident of victory, the British commenced the attack: they were met firmly and bravely by Morgan, in whose favor victory decided, and in a few hours, Tarleton fled from the field, leaving behind him three hundred killed or wounded, and more than five hundred taken prisoners.

As soon as Lord Cornwallis heard of the disaster at the Cowpens, and that Morgan was hastening with his prisoners towards Virginia, he started in pursuit, hoping to overtake and defeat Morgan,

Describe that of the Americans. — Where did the campaign of 1781 open? — Who was sent into western Carolina, and for what purpose? — What British officer was sent against him? — What is said of Tarleton? — What was the result of their encounter? — By whom was Morgan pursued?

before he should unite with General Greene. A kind Providence seemed to watch over the American army; Morgan succeeded in joining General Greene, and crossed the Catawba and Yadkin, whilst heavy rains rendered both of these streams impassable for several hours to their pursuers. Between the Yadkin and the Dan the pursuit was so vigorous, that although the American army had marched forty miles a-day, they had but just crossed the river when Lord Cornwallis appeared on the opposite bank. Here the pursuit ended, for the Dan is too deep a stream to be forded, and the British could procure no boats. Lord Cornwallis returned to Hillsboro, in North Carolina.

General Greene re-crossed the Dan, a branch of the Roanoke, on the twenty-second of February, and being reinforced by militia, gave battle to the British at Guilford Court House, on the fifteenth of March. After a bloody contest of two hours, the Americans were compelled to retreat, but the enemy had suffered too much to be able to pursue them.

During the summer of this year, numerous encounters took place between the two armies. General Greene was defeated near Camden, and obliged to abandon an attack on Fort Ninety-Six, but on the other hand, Lee, Sumpter, and others, kept up the contest with such spirit, that by the close of the season the British were driven into the south-eastern corner of the State. Here, about sixty miles from Charleston, was fought, on the eighth of September, the battle of Eutaw Springs, which ended favorably to the Americans. After three years of hard fighting throughout the various districts of Carolina, the British now abandoned or surrendered all their posts, and retreated to Charleston.

We now come to the last battle of the Revolution. It was fought at Yorktown, in Virginia. After the battle of Guilford Court House, Lord Cornwallis had entered this State and taken

Who united with him afterwards? — Was the pursuit successful? — What obstacles retarded the British? — Where was the battle of March 15th fought, and with what result? — Mention another battle and its result. — Relate the success of General Sumpter. — Mention one of the last battles fought in South Carolina and its result. — With what battle did the Revolutionary War close? — What British officer had entered Virginia?

command of the forces there, which, in August 1781, were concentrated at Yorktown. General La Fayette had been sent to Virginia early in the year, to protect the State from the ravages of General Arnold, who had destroyed the military stores at Richmond, and committed depredations in the neighborhood.

General Washington had hoped, with the aid of the French land and naval forces, under Counts Rochambeau and de Grasse, to attack the city of New York. An intercepted letter had informed Sir Henry Clinton of this intention. Circumstances induced Washington to change his plans. Instead of attempting New York, he prepared to attack the British in Virginia. To deceive the enemy, he still kept up the appearance of a design against Sir Henry Clinton, and had succeeded in crossing the Delaware before his real intentions were suspected. It was then too late for that officer to make any efficient opposition to Washington's southern progress. Admiral Count de Grasse had arrived in the Chesapeake, August 30th, and blockaded York river. Washington, leaving the Hudson, and being joined by the French detachments from New England, united with Count de Grasse before Yorktown, on the thirtieth of September.

In the meantime, Sir Henry Clinton, alarmed for his army at the south, endeavored to counteract Washington's design by sending General Arnold into Connecticut, where he burned New London, and committed horrible cruelties. The British General also threatened New Jersey and the forts in the Hudson Highlands, but his efforts were fruitless.

On the union of the allies in Virginia, immediate arrangements were made for the siege of Yorktown. The first trench was dug on the morning of the sixth of October. At the end of ten days, Lord Cornwallis had formed the desperate resolution of crossing York river, cutting his way through the forces at Gloucester

Who was sent to defend it? — What city did Washington design to attack? — What did he do instead? — How did Washington prevent pursuit? — When did the French and American forces unite at Yorktown? — What measures did Sir Henry Clinton adopt to withdraw Washington from Virginia? — Was he successful? — When, and how, was the siege of Yorktown opened? — What desperate resolve was formed by Cornwallis?

Point, opposite Yorktown, and by rapid marches, effecting an escape to New York. A storm of wind and rain, rendering York river impassable, defeated this rash design. On the morning of the seventeenth, he desired a truce, and signified to Washington his willingness to consider terms of capitulation. It was agreed that the terms of surrender at Yorktown should be precisely those which the British had required of General Lincoln at Charleston the previous year. General Lincoln himself was present, having been exchanged the preceding November.

1781. The articles having been signed, the ceremony of surrender took place on the afternoon of the nineteenth of October. The allied armies were drawn up in two columns: Gen. Washington and Count de Rochambeau were on horse-back, at the head of their respective troops. Between the two armies, the conquered garrison marched out, with colors cased, and laid down their arms. General Lincoln superintended this ceremony, and to him Lord Cornwallis's sword was delivered.

Great was the joy throughout America, when the news of the capture of Lord Cornwallis was received. The tidings reached Philadelphia, where Congress was assembled, at midnight, on the twenty-third. They fell upon the startled ears of the slumbering inhabitants in the watchman's cry, "Past two o'clock, and Cornwallis is taken."

The battle of Yorktown ended the war, for although the British still held New York, Charleston, and Savannah, and a few plundering expeditions were made, no regular campaign was under-

1782. taken, and negotiations for peace were commenced early in the spring of 1782. Before the close of the year, the two southern cities had been given up, but New York was held

1783. until November of the following year. The final treaty of peace was signed September 3d, 1783, by commissioners who met at Paris. By it the United States was acknowledged as one of the independent nations of the earth.

What prevented its accomplishment? — To what did Cornwallis at length accede? — What terms of surrender were adopted? — When did it take place, and describe the ceremony? — What was the effect of this event throughout the land? — What cities remained in the hands of the British? — When were they surrendered? — When, and where, was the treaty of peace signed?

NAVAL WARFARE.

At the commencement of the War of Independence, the colonists had not a single armed vessel along their extensive line of sea-coast. Yet, within a month of the skirmish at Lexington, came the news that a party of young men at Machias, on the coast of Maine, had captured the "Margaretta," a British armed schooner, engaged in shipping lumber. The same party secured two other prizes, and having taken them to Massachusetts, that colony immediately fitted out five or six armed vessels to cruise along the New England coast.

In the autumn of 1775, Congress ordered seventeen vessels to be built, and appointed a committee of marine. Besides the vessels ordered by Congress, there were a great many privateers, or vessels fitted out by private individuals. The object of this little navy was to intercept and capture British transport ships, and so diligently did they set about it, that in the course of three months, the New England vessels alone, had taken thirty prizes. One of the first naval flags bore the device of a rattlesnake, with the motto, "Don't tread on me." 1775.

Among the bravest commanders during the war, was John Paul Jones. He was a Scotchman by birth, but entered the American Navy, and distinguished himself on board the first squadron which left the coast of the United States to attack the British fleet: during the second year of the war, he entered the harbor of Newport with sixteen prizes. The commanders of other vessels were equally active. At the close of 1777, the Americans had captured four hundred and sixty-seven merchant- 1776.

What is said of the want of armed vessels at this time? — When, and by whom, was the "Margaretta" taken? — What other prizes followed, and how were they disposed of? — What measures did Congress take to provide vessels of war? — What other vessels were fitted out, and with what object? — With what success did they meet? — Who was Paul Jones, and how did he distinguish himself? — What prizes had the American vessels taken at the close of 1777?

men, in defiance of the seventy war vessels stationed by the British on our coast.

1778. In April, 1778, Captain John P. Jones appeared in the British seas: he entered an English port, took the fort, destroyed the guns, and departed, after setting fire to one of the vessels lying in the harbor. The flames spread, and threatened to destroy all the other shipping, but they were finally extinguished, and the daring John Paul sailed away, leaving the inhabitants of the coast deeply impressed with the terror of his name. His next exploit was to attempt the capture of the Earl of Selkirk at his residence, near the mouth of the river Dee. The Earl's absence saved him, but the house was robbed of valuable plate by some of the sailors. Jones afterwards obtained this plate, and sent it to Lady Selkirk, with a letter of apology and regret. From Scotland, Jones sailed to Carrickfergus, on the Irish coast, where he captured the ship of war "Drake," and, after obtaining other prizes, returned to Brest, a French port.

In the year 1778, the treaty with France was made, and the aid of her navy animated the hearts and hopes of American seamen. In the summer of 1779, a little squadron of five ships, the Bonhomme Richard (named for Franklin's "Poor Richard"), Alliance, Pallas, Cerf, and Vengeance, were placed under the command of Captain John Paul Jones, and sent to the coast of Scotland. His crew was a motley assemblage of Europeans, Americans, and even Malays. After a variety of adventures in the British seas, this little squadron encountered a fleet of forty merchantmen, escorted by two English men-of-war, the "Serapis," and "Countess of Scarborough." Captain Jones gave them chase, and coming up with the "Serapis," a desperate fight commenced between her and the "Bonhomme Richard."

1779.

The two vessels were lashed together, and as the conflict grew more fierce, the men fought hand to hand with pistols, pikes, and

---

Relate the exploit of Captain Jones in May, 1778. — What was his next attempt? — What capture did he make on the Irish coast? — When was the treaty with France made? — What squadron was committed to Captain Jones, and when? — What fleet did he encounter? — Describe the conflict that followed.

cutlasses. The "Bonhomme Richard" was pierced by balls and rapidly filling with water, and three several times both ships were on fire: at the end of little more than two hours, the "Serapis," and shortly after, the "Countess of Scarborough," struck their colors, and surrendered. The crew of the "Bonhomme Richard" was conveyed to the other ships, and in a few hours more, the gallant vessel went down. This battle occurred off the English coast, not far north of the mouth of the river Humber, off Flamborough Head. Sept. 23, 1779.

This was in 1779. Many other naval battles were fought during the Revolution, but none more terrible than this. It has been stated that, in the course of the war, the American cruisers captured eight hundred and three vessels, and seized merchandise amounting to more than eleven millions of dollars.

What number of vessels and amount of property was taken by the Americans during the war?

REVIEW QUESTIONS. — Describe the attack on Charleston. — Relate the events which followed. — What is said of the patriots at the south? — Relate the story of Marion and the British officer.

Give the history of Benedict Arnold's treason. — Relate the story of André's capture.

What was the arrangement of the forces at the close of 1780?

Relate the first encounter of 1781. — Describe the pursuit of Morgan and Greene by Cornwallis. — Describe the battle of Guilford Court-House. — What other skirmishes at the South, and their results?

What forces were in Virginia? — What did Washington plan? — Describe his advance to Yorktown. — By whom was he aided? — Relate the events which led to the surrender at Yorktown. — Describe it.

What were the closing events of the war? — When, and where, was peace signed.

When, and by whom, was the "Margaretta" captured? — What success had the New England vessels of war?

Who was John Paul Jones? — Describe the capture of the "Serapis" and "Countess of Scarborough."

What is said to have been the number of vessels, and amount of merchandise, captured by American cruisers during the war?

CHAPTER XVI.

WASHINGTON AND THE CONSTITUTION.

"And when the storm of war was gone,
Enjoyed the peace your valor won."

HOPKINSON.

ON the nineteenth of April, 1783, just eight years after the battle of Lexington, peace was proclaimed.

The war was at an end, but the miseries and evils which follow in its train, were far from being ended. The next few years are among the darkest in American history. The country was exhausted: agriculture, commerce, and the fisheries, had been neglected; a debt of forty millions of dollars had been contracted, and Congress had no money to pay it. The troops, when they received any pay at all, had received it in paper money issued by Congress. This money had grown less and less in value, until it was hardly worth a hundredth part of its original amount. The army began to fear lest they should be disbanded and sent to their homes unpaid. The spirit of discontent ran high. An address was circulated in the division stationed at Newburgh, suggesting violent measures against Congress, should it refuse to satisfy their demands.

1781, to 1789.

Washington, who felt deeply the wrongs of the army, yet whose noble spirit was grieved that they should tarnish their fair fame by deeds of violence, used all his influence to calm their excited feelings, and succeeded, in a great measure, in quieting their fears. In November, the army was finally disbanded. Washington, after taking an affecting farewell of his officers in New York, resigned to Congress his commission, and returned to

1783.

Recite the motto. — When was peace proclaimed? — Describe the state of the country at the close of the war. — Why were the soldiers dissatisfied? — How did their discontent show itself at Newburgh? — How did Washington feel, and act, with regard to the soldiers? — When was the army disbanded? — What course did Washington then take?

his home at Mount Vernon, which he had seen but once during the war.

From its quiet happiness, so refreshing to his spirit, he writes, "I feel now, as I conceive a wearied traveler must do, who, after treading many a painful step with a heavy burden on his shoulders, is eased of the latter, having reached the haven to which all the former were directed; and from his housetop is looking back, and tracing, with an eager eye, the meanders by which he escaped the quicksands and mires which lay in his way; and into which none but the all-powerful Guide and Dispenser of human events could have prevented his falling."

Washington deeply deplored the evils gathering round his country, and it is to his wise counsels and unwearied efforts, that, under God, we owe our deliverance from them. By the War of Independence, debts had been incurred to the army, to foreign governments, and to individuals, who had loaned large sums. Congress had no means of paying these debts, unless the separate thirteen States would raise the money. This the States were most backward in doing, partly from inability, but more because they were jealous of Congress, and unwilling to place too much power in its hands. There was in truth no government that deserved the name: Congress could not keep its engagements, and foreign nations would not make treaties of commerce with us, because of our disunited condition. "We are," said Washington, "one nation to-day, and thirteen to-morrow,—who will treat with us on these terms?"

In New England, large bodies of unprincipled men, taking advantage of the weakness of government, refused to pay the taxes, invaded the courts of justice, and threatened openly to overturn the government. General Lincoln was sent against them, and succeeded in putting down this formidable insurrection, generally

What did he write of his own feelings after reaching his home? — How did he continue to benefit his country? — What debts had been incurred during the war? — What means were there of paying them? — Why did not the States at once raise the money? — What was the condition of the government? — What did Washington say of it? — What disorders occurred in New England? — Who was sent to put down the rebellion?

known (from the name of the leader) as Shay's Rebellion. This outbreak opened the eyes of many to the necessity of strengthening the hands of Congress.

1786. A meeting to take into consideration the condition of trade, had been appointed at Annapolis for the month of September. When assembled, it was found that little could be done without the co-operation of more States, and also, that it would be necessary to alter "the Articles of Confederation." These were the only bond of union between the States: they had been framed in 1777, and had answered the purpose during the war, but were found totally inadequate to the present state of affairs, It was therefore proposed to hold a Convention the following May, at Philadelphia, for the purpose of forming a more complete union of the States. A resolution to this effect was afterwards offered in Congress, and carried.

1787. In the old State-House in Philadelphia, the same which had witnessed the signing of the Declaration of Independence, representatives from every State, excepting Rhode Island, met on the twenty-third of May, 1787, to revise the "Articles of Confederation." Washington was there as its President, and Franklin, who had so warmly advocated union in the old colonial times, at the Albany Convention, of 1754. Many and wise were the counsellors, but a difficult task lay before them.

Every State had its own interests. Even good men are not always ready to obey the command, "Look not every man on his own things, but every man also on the things of others." Months passed by, and still no plan was agreed upon. Often it seemed doubtful, amid so many contending interests, whether they ever would unite. In one of these threatening hours, Franklin rose, and reminding the members of the Convention that "God governs in the affairs of men," he told them "that without His aid they

By what name is this insurrection known? — What good resulted from it? — When, and where, was a meeting held upon the subject of trade? — What difficulties were in its way? — What is said of the "Articles of Confederation?" — What new Convention was recommended? — When, and where, did it meet? — Of what was it composed? — What distinguished men were members of it? — What hindered their united action? — What did Franklin say of their need of Divine aid?

should succeed no better in their political building, than the builders of Babel," for "except the Lord build the house, they labor in vain that build it;" he moved, therefore, "that henceforth, prayers imploring the assistance of Heaven and its blessing, should be made every morning before proceeding to business." Although for some reason this proposition was not carried out, it shows the spirit which animated some of the great men of that day.

Soon, the old "Articles of Confederation" were cast aside, and the draft of a new Constitution was written. Long, ably, and warmly, was every article discussed. There were two parties in the Convention and throughout the land. The one sought to increase the powers of the general government, and to place in its hands an authority designed to strengthen the union abroad and at home. These were the Federalists and friends of the new Constitution. The other party were jealous of too much power being given to the general government; they feared a monarchy, and desired that the governing power should rest with the individual States. These were the Anti-federalists, and for the most part, urgent in modifying the proposed Constitution.

At length, on the seventeenth of September, 1787, the representatives in the Convention having signed the Constitution, it went forth to obtain the sanction of the individual States. Here, again, its fate became very doubtful. It was not until the year 1790, that the last State of the old Thirteen, Rhode Island, gave in her consent to the Constitution. Eleven of the States, however, ratified it within a year, and the consent of nine was sufficient for its adoption. The day fixed for it to take effect, was the fourth of March, 1789.

Of course, in the choice of a Chief Magistrate, provided by the Constitution, all hearts turned towards Washington, and by the unanimous voice of the people, he became their first President. John Adams was chosen Vice President.

What resolution did he offer? — What new course was then taken? — What parties were there in the Convention? — What objects did the Federalists seek to effect? — What is said of the other party? — When was the new Constitution signed? — How was it received by the States? — When did it take effect? — Who were chosen the first President and Vice President?

WASHINGTON'S ADMINISTRATION.

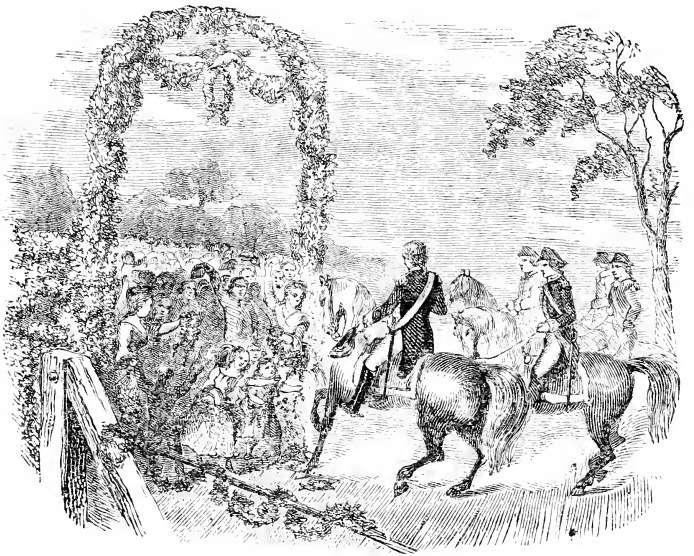
(From April 30th, 1789, to March 4th, 1797.)

INTELLIGENCE of his election reached General Washington on the fourteenth of April, 1789. With many a painful feeling of regret he left Mount Vernon, to plunge once more amid the cares of public life. His friends and neighbors expressed in warmest terms their feelings at losing him again from their midst. "The first and best of citizens," said they, in a farewell address, "must leave us: our aged must lose their ornament; our youth, their model; our agriculture, its improver; our commerce, its friend; our infant academy, its protector; and our poor, their benefactor. * * * * * * To that Being, who maketh and unmaketh at His will, we commend you; and after the accomplishment of the arduous business to which you are called, may He restore to us again, the best of men, and the most beloved fellow-citizen."

Such were the good wishes which followed this truly great man from the valley of the Potomac, and all along his course many "rose up to call him blessed." At Trenton, over the little stream, rendered memorable by the campaign of 1776, was thrown an arch, wreathed with garlands of flowers and laurels, and on it, in large gilt letters, the inscription, "*The Defender of the Mothers, will be the Protector of the Daughters.*" Matrons, and maidens, and children, came forth to meet him, bearing baskets and garlands of flowers, to scatter at his feet. He approached New York, then the seat of government, in a barge of thirteen oars, accompanied by boats gaily decorated and bands of music, and when he landed at Murray's wharf, the roar of cannon and joyful acclamations of the multitude rent the air.

On the thirtieth of April, the ceremony of inauguration took

What was the period of Washington's administration? — With what feelings did he leave his home for public life? — Recite the words of his friends and neighbors when he again left them? — How was he received at Trenton? — How did he approach New York? — How was he received there? — When was he inaugurated?



Washington's Reception at Trenton.

place. On the balcony of the old Federal Hall, Chancellor Livingstone administered to Washington the oath by which he swore to uphold the Constitution of the United States. The glad shouts of the people testified the feelings with which they regarded their first President. This ceremony over, they went in procession to St. Paul's Church, and there prayed for God's blessing on the new government.

At the commencement of Washington's administration, the condition of the country was a trying one. The treasury was empty; the Indians on the northern and western frontiers hostile; the pirates of the Barbary States attacked our ships in the Mediterranean, and condemned many an American citizen to the horrors of slavery or an Algerine dungeon; Spain refused to let us

Describe the ceremonies of that occasion. — Relate the difficulties under which Washington's administration commenced.

navigate the Mississippi, and England, although Mr. Adams had been sent thither as the representative of the United States, at the close of the war, had made no treaty of commerce with us, and sent no minister to our country. Between the two countries mutually bitter feelings had grown up, each accusing the other of a non-observance of the late treaty. Added to these, the efforts of the French to involve us in aid of their revolution, were a fruitful source of anxiety for many years.

1789. To overcome these difficulties, Washington applied all the powers of his excellent judgment and ardent love of country. A cabinet, composed of the heads of the State, Treasury, and War Departments, and the Attorney-General, all wise and able men, aided him in this work. Mr. Jefferson was Secretary of State, Mr. Hamilton of the Treasury, General Knox at the head of the War Department, and Mr. Randolph, Attorney-General.

1790. The first difficulty to be met was the payment of the public debt. Mr. Hamilton proposed a plan for accomplishing this, which, after a great deal of opposition in Congress, was adopted: that it was a wise plan, was soon proved by the increased prosperity of the country. A United States' Bank was established at Philadelphia, in 1791, and a national mint, from which the first coin was issued in 1792. Vermont, which had been claimed by New Hampshire and New York, became independent, and in 1791, was admitted into the Union, the first addition to the old Thirteen.

1791. To the mode of raising money by taxation great opposition was made. In western Pennsylvania, the inhabitants so violently resisted the tax levied on ardent spirits, as almost to threaten the overthrow of the government. They rose against the inspectors and the marshall, obliged them to desist from all attempts to collect the tax, and even threatened them with death. To put down this formidable rebellion, generally known as the

How did he endeavor to overcome them? — Of whom was his Cabinet composed? — What was the first difficulty to be met? — Who proposed the plan for paying the debt? — What proved it to have been a wise one? — What institutions were established at Philadelphia? — What mode of raising money was opposed? — What is said of the opposition in western Pennsylvania?

"Whiskey Insurrection," Congress sent an army under General Henry Lee. On the approach of the troops, the rioters retired, and finding they had not the support, as they had hoped, of the people throughout the Union, in their rebellion, they laid down their arms and submitted to the government.

1790, to 1795.

The Indians on the frontier were a constant source of danger to the inhabitants of the west. All the horrors of Indian hostility were suffered; the midnight surprise of the forest settlement, the cruel massacre, and the torture yet more cruel. Three armies were at different times sent against the Miamis and north-western tribes; the first, under General Harmar, and the second, under General St. Clair, were defeated by the Indians; but at length, after the war had been carried on for five years, General Wayne succeeded in making a treaty with these savage neighbors, and our western country was left to thrive for many years unmolested by Indian hostility.

With the Dey of Algiers, the most formidable of the Barbary powers, negotiations were entered into in 1795, which protected our infant commerce, and the autumn of the same year witnessed a treaty with Spain, by which its claims upon our western States were abandoned, and the navigation of the Mississippi thrown open to us.

But of all the countries whose relations with the United States perplexed the mind of the President and his Cabinet, none caused more trouble than France and England. The people of France, roused by a sense of the wrongs which had oppressed them for centuries, and animated by the prospects of our happy Republic, threw off the yoke of monarchy, and hoped for happiness and freedom. But alas! their efforts were accompanied by many and fearful crimes: their King, Louis XVI., and his lovely Queen,

By what name is this rebellion known? — How was it suppressed? — What troubles were suffered from the Indians? — What measures were taken against them? — Who were the commanders of these armies? — Who finally succeeded in making a treaty with the Indians? — What treaty was made with Algiers, and when? — What treaty was made with Spain the same year? — With what countries were the greatest difficulties encountered? — Why had the people of France thrown off their monarchy? — What crimes had they committed in their efforts for freedom?

Marie Antoinette, were guillotined, thousands perished by the same fearful death, and many of the nobles fled from their country.

1793. At last, France declared war against England, Spain, and Holland. All Europe became involved in the fearful wars of the French Revolution.

In America, where the people saw nothing of the horrors of the French Revolution, and looked upon it only as the struggle of friends and allies for the same freedom they had aided us in obtaining, there was felt the strongest sympathy for France, and no little animosity towards England. Washington's far-sighted wisdom saw the evils, and although he hoped that good might be brought out of them at last, he felt it was neither the duty nor the interest of the United States to aid the French Revolutionists. The aid which we had received in our time of need came not from these Revolutionists, but from the government which they had overthrown. No claim of gratitude could be brought by them against us.

When Mr. Genet came to this country as the representative of the Republic of France, he was received with the warmest enthusiasm by the people. Taking advantage of this state of feeling, and utterly regardless of the President's proclamation of neutrality, Genet authorized the fitting out of privateers from this country, to attack the commerce of Great Britain; a country with which we were at peace. Many British prizes were actually captured, and brought into our ports by these privateers. At length, Mr. Genet threatened to appeal from the Government to the people, of whose entire sympathy he thought himself sure. This threat roused all their patriotism, and also their respect for the President, and Mr. Genet's influence at once declined.

During all these events, our government was endeavoring to negotiate a commercial treaty with England. But the state of

---

What nations became at war with France? — How did the Americans regard the French Revolution? — What did Washington think about aiding the French? — Were the Americans under obligations to the Revolutionists? — Who was Mr. Genet, and how was he received in the United States? — What improper course did he pursue? — What threat did he make? — What effect did this threat produce? — What object was the government trying to accomplish?

feeling throughout the United States towards France made this a very difficult matter. The anti-Federalists, now a large and strong party, opposed everything like a treaty with England, as a wrong done to France.

Over all these difficulties, the calm wisdom of Washington finally triumphed. Domestic discontents were quelled. The year 1795 witnessed treaties with the Indians, with Algiers, with Spain, and Jay's treaty with England. Mr. Genet was recalled during Washington's administration, and neutrality towards France was observed. The treaty with England, however, greatly incensed the French people, and during the next administration threatened serious difficulties.

At the close of his second term, Washington, refusing to be re-elected, retired, followed by the blessings and gratitude of his country, to the quiet of his home at Mount Vernon. 1797.

Why was it a difficult one? — What party opposed the treaty, and why? — What is said of Washington under these difficulties? — What treaties were formed in 1795? — How did Washington's administration act towards France? — How did the French regard the treaty with England? — When did Washington retire from office? — With what feelings was he regarded by his country?

REVIEW QUESTIONS. — What was the condition of the country and of the army at the close of the war? — When was the army disbanded? — What debts had been incurred, and what is said of the difficulty of paying them?

What led to the Convention for framing the Constitution, and when, and where, did it meet? — What was framed? — Describe the two political parties in the land. — When was the Constitution signed? — When was it adopted?

Describe Washington's journey from Mount Vernon to New York, and his inauguration. — Describe the condition of the country at the time of his inauguration. — What was the first difficulty, and how was it overcome? — Describe the "Whiskey Insurrection."

How were the Indians subdued? — What was the condition of affairs in France at this time? — What was the feeling in the United States towards France? — Describe Mr. Genet's course in this country.

Mention the treaties made in 1795. — What is said of Washington in 1797?

CHAPTER XVII.

FROM ADAMS'S ADMINISTRATION TO THE PEACE OF 1815.

"While with patriot pride,
To our laws we're allied,
No foe can subdue us, no faction divide."

R. T. PAINE.

1797. John Adams succeeded Washington as President of the United States, and Thomas Jefferson was elected Vice President.

The recent treaty with England gave such displeasure to France as very nearly to bring on a war with our former friend and ally. The French government refused to receive the ambassadors of the United States; but it was hinted to them, that if money were paid by the United States to France, the latter would be more likely to enter into negotiations. To this unworthy suggestion, Mr. Pinckney (one of the ambassadors), nobly replied, "Millions for defence, but not one cent for tribute." Two of our ministers were ordered to leave France, and the third (Mr. Gerry), only permitted to remain, because, being an anti-Federalist, he was supposed to be favorable to that country.

1798. Preparations for war were made, and General Washington once more summoned from Mount Vernon to take command of the armies of his country. But the storm of war was mercifully averted. In the autumn of 1799, Napoleon Bonaparte overthrew the existing government of France, and took the control of affairs into his own hands.

Who were the second President and Vice President of the United States? — What cause threatened a war with France? — How did the French government treat the United States' ambassador? — What hint did they give? — How did Mr. Pinckney reply to it? — What further acts were committed towards the ministers of the United States? — What call was again made upon General Washington? — How was the threatened war averted?

One of his first acts was to receive the commissioners, and enter into a treaty with the United States. When 1800. the bearers of this treaty reached America, they found no heart for war. The spirit of party, the bitterness of Federalist and anti-Federalist was hushed, and the *united* nation mourned at the grave of Washington; the man whom they delighted to own as "first in peace, first in war, and first in the hearts of his countrymen." Washington had died at Mount Vernon, on the fourteenth of December, 1799.

In the summer of 1800, the seat of government was removed from Philadelphia, and in the following March, the third 1801. President, Thomas Jefferson, was inaugurated in the new Capitol at Washington. The following year, the Spanish Governor of Louisiana refused to admit United States' vessels into the port of New Orleans; but the threatened cloud passed over. Louisiana having been ceded to France, Napoleon Bonaparte, in 1803, sold it to our government for fifteen millions of dollars. Of this sale, Napoleon is said to have remarked: "This accession of territory strengthens forever the power of the United States, and I have just given to England a maritime rival which will sooner or later humble her pride."

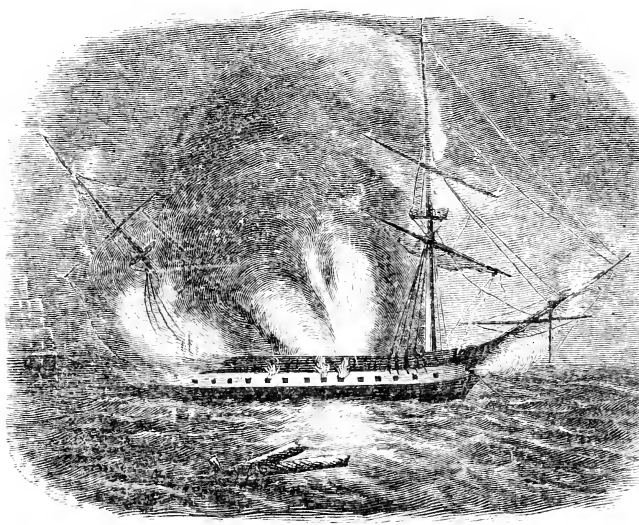
The treaty which had been made with the Barbary powers, in 1795, had provided that the United States should pay an annual sum of money for the protection of our commerce in the Mediterranean Sea. One of these piratical powers, Tripoli, had grown more and more insolent in her demands, until our government refused any longer to make the payment agreed upon. The Governor (or Bashaw as he was called) then declared war against the United States, and our little Navy, under Commodore Preble, was sent

---

When was a treaty made with France? — What had silenced the spirit of party? — When was the seat of government removed from Philadelphia? — Who was the third President of the United States? — Where was the new seat of government? — What trouble arose with Spain? — How was it settled? — How much was paid for Louisiana? — What did Napoleon say of the sale? — What had been agreed upon in the treaty with the Barbary States? — Why did the United States refuse to make the payment? — What was the consequence? — Who was the commander of the navy at this time?

to the Mediterranean. The "Philadelphia," commanded by Captain Bainbridge, grounded in the harbor of Tripoli: she was captured, and her crew reduced to slavery.

1804. In February of this year, Lieutenant Stephen Decatur performed the brave exploit of destroying this vessel, which was guarded by a Tripolitan crew, and moored under the very guns of the castle. With a few brave companions, he boldly ventured into the harbor, boarded the "Philadelphia," killed the men who guarded her, set her on fire, and escaped from the



Burning of the "Philadelphia."

burning vessel without losing a man. This brave defence of our commerce alarmed the Bashaw. This alarm was increased by an event which occurred the next year. In the spring of 1805, his elder brother, Hamet (the rightful heir to the throne of Tripoli), aided by the American consul at Tunis, marched across the Libyan

Where was he sent? — What disaster occurred at Tripoli? — Relate the exploit of Lieutenant Decatur.

desert to assert his rights. After two disastrous battles with this force, the Bashaw made a treaty of peace.

For ten years longer, however, our commerce suffered in the Mediterranean from the Barbary pirates. It was not until the year 1815, during Madison's administration, that the final treaty was made, which secured our commerce from their attacks. In that year, Commodore Decatur defeated the Algerine fleet, compelled the Barbary powers to pay large sums for the injury they had done, and to give up, by treaty, all claim to tribute from the United States in future.

During the second term of Jefferson's administration, beginning in 1805, a conspiracy, planned by one once high in office and station, threatened the safety of the Union. The author of this conspiracy was Aaron Burr, a bold, unprincipled man. During Jefferson's first administration, Burr had been Vice President of the United States, but had fallen into contempt for killing Alexander Hamilton in a duel. Hoping to mend his desperate fortunes, Burr fled to the far west, and there sought to found an empire, over which he might rule. He was arrested in the Mississippi territory by order of the President, brought to Richmond, and tried; no sufficient evidence of his designs being found, he was acquitted. 1805. 1807.

The whole of Mr. Jefferson's second term was a time of anxiety and trial. The Emperor Napoleon was at the height of his power, and England was opposing all her strength to resist him. So intent were these two nations upon injuring each other, that they paid little regard to the rights or interests of other countries not engaged in the war. The British government issued "Orders," and the French Emperor replied by "Decrees," forbidding the

What led to a treaty of peace with the Bashaw? — How long did our commerce continue to suffer from the Barbary pirates? — Who finally defeated the Algerine fleet? — What did he compel them to do? — What conspiracy was formed in 1805? — What was the character and standing of Aaron Burr? — What is said of his object and designs? — When, and by whom, was he arrested? — What was the result of his trial? — What is said of Mr. Jefferson's second term? — What nations were fiercely opposing each other? — What was the consequence to other countries? — What "Orders" and "Decrees" were issued?

ships of neutrals to enter the ports, or engage in trade with their respective enemies. By these regulations, nearly all the ports of Europe were closed against the United States. Between these contending powers our commerce was well-nigh ruined. Whenever an American vessel ventured on the high seas, it was exposed to attack by English or French cruisers.

To these unjust "Orders," England added the wrong of claiming to search American vessels, and impress into her service all sailors on board who might be of English birth. Mistakes were often made, and American and naturalized citizens forced on board English ships. Such was the state of affairs at the close of Jefferson's administration.

1809. Mr. Madison became President in March, 1809. Early in this year hopes of more friendly relations with France and England were entertained, but they proved false, and the causes of complaint still continued.

1811. During this year, the Shawnee Indians were stirred up to hostility by British agents, and, under their noted Chief, Tecumseh, threatened deeds of desolation against the western settlements. General Harrison, the Governor of Indiana Territory, a brave soldier, was sent against them, and defeated them in the battle of Tippecanoe. This was fought in the northwest part of Indiana, where the river Tippecanoe falls into the Wabash.

1812. This act of hostility on the part of Great Britain, together with continued aggressions on the commerce of the United States, roused a hostile spirit throughout every section

What was their effect upon American commerce? — What additional wrong did England inflict? — What was the effect of this? — When did Mr. Madison's administration commence? — What hopes were indulged, and how did they prove? — What Indians were excited to hostility in 1812, and by whom? — Who was their Chief? — Who defeated them? — Where was the battle fought? — What was the effect of this and other acts of Great Britain?

of the Union, excepting New England. This part of the country, being largely engaged in commerce, dreaded hostilities as injurious to her interests. On the eighteenth of June, 1812, war with Great Britain was declared.

General Dearborn was appointed Commander-in-chief of the American forces, and the operations of this war of three years may be divided into — 1st. The campaign on the northern frontier of the United States. 2d. The war on the ocean; and 3d. The attacks upon the eastern and southern sea-bord. The first event of the war was disastrous. General Hull was ordered to invade Canada, but fearing the approach of a superior force, he retreated to Detroit, which place, on the approach of thirteen hundred British and Indians he surrendered, without attempting to defend.

The following year, however, this loss was repaired. 1813. Large forces were stationed all along the northern frontier, from Lake Champlain to the head of Lake Erie. The British forces which had invaded Michigan and Ohio were repulsed with great loss to the enemy, and Commodore Perry, on the tenth of September, engaged the British fleet on Lake Erie. The result of the battle is briefly told in Commodore Perry's despatch: "We have met the enemy, and they are ours." This victory, giving them the command of the Lake, enabled the Americans to land forces in Michigan for the recovery of Detroit.

This was accomplished by General Harrison, the hero of Tippecanoe. After leaving a garrison in the town, he pursued the enemy. Coming up with them near a Moravian settlement on the banks of the river Thames, in Canada West, he fought a battle, in which the British General was defeated, and the fierce

Why did New England dread a war with Great Britain? — When was war against England declared? — Who was Commander-in-chief in this war? — How long did it continue? — How may the operations in this war be divided? — Give the account of General Hull's orders and defeat? — What better success attended the American arms the following year? — Where did Commodore Perry meet the British fleet? — What was the result of the battle? — What were the advantages of this victory? — What services were rendered by Gen. Harrison in 1813?

Indian Chief, Tecumseh, killed. Early in the same year, York, now Toronto, had been captured by the Americans.

1814. But it was in the summer of the following year that the army of the north struck the most decisive blow on the Canadian frontier. Generals Brown, Scott, and Ripley, crossing Niagara river, captured Fort Erie on the third of July; on the fourth, defeated the British at the Battle of Chippewa, and on the twenty-fifth, won the battle of Lundy's Lane, fought on the Canada side, within sound of the roar of the mighty cataract. These victories drove the British from the Niagara frontier.

On Lake Champlain, off Plattsburgh, the young and brave Commodore McDonough compelled a British fleet to surrender, whilst the army under General Macomb defeated General Prevost, who had advanced from Canada, at the same time, for the capture of the town.

In the war on the ocean, our little navy, consisting of twenty ships, had to do battle with a power which had ten hundred and sixty at her command; yet, so brave and daring were her crews, that the ocean warfare of 1812 added fresh honor to the American Navy. On the nineteenth of August, 1812, Commodore Hull, in the "Constitution," captured the "Guerriere," and on the twenty-fifth of October, Commodore Decatur, commanding the "United States," met the "Macedonian" off the Canary Islands, and after a severe battle, compelled her to surrender. On the Brazilian coast, the "Constitution" captured the British frigate "Java," on the twenty-ninth of December, 1812.

Privateering was also carried on to a great extent. During one year of the war alone, it is said, that two hundred and fifty merchantmen, besides armed British vessels, were captured by the Americans. In 1813, however, the United States Navy met with severe checks and losses. Captain Lawrence, on the "Chesa-

What is said of the army in 1814? — What Generals commanded, and where were victories won? — What of the battle of Lake Champlain? — What General was defeated by General Macomb? — What had been the purpose of General Prevost? — What is related of the size and exploits of the American Navy? — Relate the victories of Commodores Hull and Decatur. — To what extent was privateering carried on? — What is said of the Navy in 1813? — Give the account of the encounter of the "Chesapeake" and "Shannon."

peake," sailed from Boston, to meet the "Shannon," in reply to a challenge given by the latter, to any vessel of the same size. The two frigates met at the entrance of Boston harbor, and becoming entangled, a severe conflict took place, which, though lasting only fifteen minutes, caused great carnage. Victory remained with the British. The brave Captain Lawrence was killed, exclaiming with his last breath, "Don't give up the ship." June 1, 1813.

This same year, the American brig, "Argus," was captured by the sloop of war, "Pelican." The "Essex," another United States vessel, after making a successful cruise, during which she had taken twelve British armed ships, was captured on the twenty-eighth of March, 1814, at Valparaiso.

The Atlantic coast suffered during the year 1813 from the ravages of a British squadron, under Admiral Cockburn. In the spring of this year, several towns on the Chesapeake Bay were plundered and burned. Norfolk was threatened, but the enemy were repulsed. These depredations were carried on along the whole coast, as far as North Carolina, and from several of the slave States large numbers of negroes were seized and sold in the British West Indies.

In August of this year, General Ross entered Washington city, burned the Capitol and President's House, and very nearly succeeded in capturing the President and his Cabinet. In September, General Ross landed at North Point, near Baltimore, and marched towards that city; whilst, at the same time, the British fleet entered the Patapsco river and bombarded Fort McHenry. The people of Baltimore, threatened by sea and land, were in hourly terror lest their city should fall into the enemy's hands; but in a skirmish with the Americans, General Ross was killed, and the bombardment proving unsuccessful, the British withdrew, and the people were relieved from apprehension. 1814.

Let us now turn to events on our southern coast, where the war

What other reverses are related? — From what squadron did the Atlantic coast suffer during the year 1813? — What particular instances are given? — When was the city of Washington entered by General Ross? — What ravages did he commit? — What further attempt did he make? — What was the result of it? — How were the people of Baltimore relieved from apprehension?

ended. A large British fleet, aided by the Spanish Governor of Florida and the Creek Indians, attacked Fort Bowyer, on Mobile Bay. By a brave defence, the enemy was repulsed. General Jackson afterwards marched to Pensacola, to punish the Spaniards for granting aid to the British. This town surrendered, and Jackson then proceeded to New Orleans, which was threatened by a British force under General Packenham.

1815. On the eighth of January, the battle of New Orleans was fought. General Jackson, with his little army of six thousand men, entrenched behind long breast-works of cotton-bags, repulsed the enemy, whose force numbered twelve thousand, with the loss of only seven men. The well-directed fire of the Americans caused great destruction among the British troops. General Packenham was killed: the British retreated. This was the last battle of the war, for, on the eighteenth of February, peace was proclaimed.

Commissioners had met to negotiate a treaty at Ghent, in Belgium, and it had been signed in December, about two weeks previous to the battle of New Orleans. The terms were satisfactory to both parties.

What attack was now made upon the southern coast? — Who assisted the British? — Who was sent against them, and what did he accomplish? — How was New Orleans threatened? — When was the battle of New Orleans fought? — What is said of General Jackson and his army? — What was the result of this battle? — When was peace proclaimed? — Where had the treaty been agreed upon? — When was it signed?

REVIEW QUESTIONS. — Relate the conduct of France at the opening of Adams's administration. — How was war prevented?

What territory did the United States gain in 1803? — With what power was the United States at war in 1803, and describe Decatur's exploits? — What led to a treaty with the Barbary powers? — When, and under what circumstances, was peace finally made?

What is said of Burr's conspiracy? — How was our country affected by the wars between France and England? — What led to a war with England? — Where was this war carried on? — Relate Hull's surrender and Perry's victory.

Describe the campaign of 1813 and 1814, on the northern frontier. — Relate the success of the American Navy during 1812. — Relate its disasters in 1813.

Describe the campaign on the Atlantic coast? — Describe the events on the Gulf coast and the battle of New Orleans? — Where, and when was peace made?

CHAPTER XVIII.

THE ADMINISTRATIONS SUCCEEDING MADISON'S.

"Dark is Palo Alto's story — sad Resaca Palma's rout —
Ah! upon those fields so gory, many a gallant life went out."

HOFFMAN.

THE ten Administrations which follow Madison's, are Monroe, 1817–1825; John Quincy Adams, 1825–1829; Jackson, 1829–1837; Van Buren, 1837–1841; Harrison and Tyler, 1841–1845; Polk, 1845–1849; Taylor and Fillmore, 1849–1853; and Pierce, since March, 1853. 1815, to 1855.

Of these, Monroe and Jackson served two terms: Harrison and Taylor died in office, the one a month, the other a year, after his inauguration. Their terms were filled out by their respective Vice Presidents, Tyler and Fillmore.

During these administrations, extending through a period of forty years from the close of the war of 1812, our Territory has rapidly extended and become populous. America, as in its early day, still offers an asylum to the oppressed, persecuted, and poverty-stricken, of other lands. A continual tide of emigration has flowed in upon our shores.

During Monroe's administration, Florida was ceded to the United States by Spain. 1819. Since the admission of Vermont, in 1791, Kentucky, Ohio, Tennessee, Louisiana, Indiana, Illinois, Mississippi, Alabama, Maine, Missouri, Arkansas, Michigan, Wisconsin, Iowa, Florida, Texas, and California, have been added to the Union, until now, the United States reverses the Old Thirteen, and numbers thirty-one.

Name the Presidents of the United States from 1815 to 1855. — Which of these served two terms, and which died in office? — What is said of the territory and population during this period? — To whom does our country offer an asylum? — How many States have been added to the original number?

1832. Some Indian wars have arisen: during General Jackson's administration, Black-Hawk, a powerful Chief of the Sac Indians, roused them, together with the Fox and Winnebago tribes of Wisconsin, to war upon the Illinois frontier. Gen. Atkinson was sent against them: Black-Hawk was captured, and the tribes driven beyond the Mississippi.

1835. Another Indian war, of a more serious nature, arose in Florida. Arrangements had been made to remove the Indian tribes of the south to a territory assigned to them beyond the Mississippi. During Jackson's administration, some of these tribes migrated thither without much opposition. The Florida Seminoles, however, unwilling to emigrate, headed by their fierce chief, Osceola, commenced a war which lasted seven years. The Indians, by retreating to everglades and morasses, where they could not be followed, rendered it almost impossible to conquer them, whilst the deadly climate and Indian massacre carried off numbers of the United States' troops.

On one occasion, as Major Dade was marching from Tampa Bay to reinforce Gen. Clinch in the interior, he was surrounded by Indians near a swamp, and his command, consisting of one hundred men, cruelly massacred: but four escaped alive, all of whom afterwards died of their wounds. Generals Clinch, Scott, Jessup, and Taylor, were all engaged at different times in the Florida war. At length, in 1842, during Tyler's administration, Osceola having died in prison at Fort Moultrie, a few years previously, his tribe consented to enter into a treaty of peace; which has been thus far adhered to.

1844. At the close of Tyler's administration, Texas, one of the provinces of Mexico, which had declared itself independent, applied for admission as a State into our Confederacy Mexico had refused to acknowledge the independence of Texas,

What Indian war occurred during Jackson's administration? — What led to the Indian war in Florida? — Who was the leader of the Seminoles? — Why was it difficult to conquer them? — What befell Major Dade's troops? — What distinguished generals were engaged in the Seminole war? — When was it brought to a close, and under what circumstances? — What was Texas previous to its admission into the Union?

and its annexation to the United States would, it was feared by many, bring on a war between the two countries.

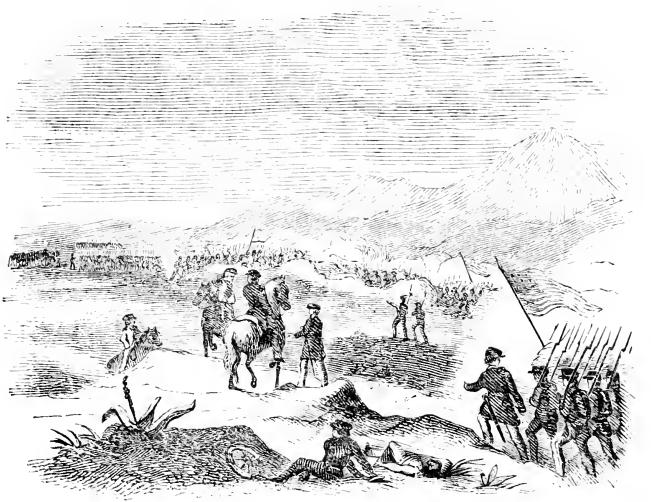
On this account, as well as on account of the objection which northerners felt to having such a large slave State added to the Union, the annexation was strongly opposed. Finally, on the first of March, 1845, the Bill for its admission passed both Houses of Congress. In July, the Texan government having approved the terms of annexation, Texas became one of the United States. Besides the admission of Texas, there were numerous other causes of discontent between the United States and Mexico, and the danger of hostilities appeared to be imminent. 1845.

President Polk ordered General Zachary Taylor to the Rio Grande, the boundary river between the two countries. His army, of fifteen hundred men, was called "the Army of Occupation," and sent for the protection of Texas. Hostilities commenced on the part of the Mexicans, on the twenty-sixth of April, 1846. On the eighth of May, as General Taylor was advancing from Point Isabel to Fort Brown, on the Rio Grande, he was met at Palo Alto by an army of six thousand Mexicans, under General Arista. A severe battle followed, which lasted nearly five hours, and resulted in the defeat of the Mexicans, with the loss of nearly five hundred in killed and wounded. The next day, the Mexicans were again encountered at Resaca de la Palma, and again routed, with a fearful loss. 1846.

Congress declared that war had begun, and General Taylor penetrated into Mexico, advancing from Matamoras towards Monterey. He defeated two armies raised to oppose him, one at Monterey, under General Ampudia, and another, under Santa Anna, at Buena Vista. Both of these battles were severe. Monterey was a strong town, situated at the foot of the Sierra Madre. Nearly four

Why did many object to receiving it as a State? — What objection had others, besides a fear of war with Mexico? — When was it admitted into the Union? — Why was General Taylor sent to the Rio Grande? — What were the numbers of the two armies at the battle of Palo Alto? — What was the result of this battle, and of that of Resaca de la Palma? — What advance did General Taylor then make? — What battles did he subsequently fight? — Where is Monterey situated? — What is said of the battle of Monterey?

days were spent in reducing it, and part of the time the battle was carried on in the streets of the city. After the battle of Monterey, an armistice of eight weeks was agreed upon; at the end of which
1847. time Taylor advanced, and the battle of Buena Vista was fought. Buena Vista (beautiful view) is a narrow mountain-



Buena Vista. — (*Beautiful View.*)

pass, where, on the twenty-first of February, General Taylor prepared, with a force of about five thousand men, to meet the Mexican army. The next day, Santa Anna approached, at the head of twenty thousand men, and ordered General Taylor to surrender. The battle that followed, lasted the entire day of the twenty-third, and resulted in victory to the Americans.

On the ninth of March, General Scott landed at Vera Cruz, compelled that city, as well as the strong Castle of St. Juan

Give the account of the battle of Buena Vista. — What conquest did Gen. Scott make at Vera Cruz?

d'Ulloa, to surrender, and proceeding on his victorious march to the city of Mexico, gained the great battle of Cerro Gordo. Advancing into the valley of Mexico, he won the victories of Contreras, Churubusco, Molino del Rey, and Chapultepec, in the environs of the capital, and finally entering the city in triumph, on the fourteenth of September, planted the American colors on the national palace of Mexico.

In August of 1846, General Kearney had taken possession of New Mexico, and started for the conquest of California. He was met on the route by tidings of the victories won there already by Colonel Frémont and Commodores Sloat and Stockton. He arrived in time to aid in completing the conquest of the country.

When General Scott took possession of his capital, Santa Anna fled, and the Mexican Congress sued for peace. On the second of February, 1848, the treaty of Guadaloupe Hidalgo was signed, by which peace was restored. In concluding this peace, the Mexican government ceded a large tract of territory to the United States, for which the former received the sum of fifteen millions of dollars. 1848.

During the last fifty years, many difficulties have arisen in our country from the vast difference of political opinions which mark the different portions of our Union. On the subject of slavery, taxation, import duties, and internal improvements, much bitter party feeling has arisen.

On the admission of Missouri as a State, in 1821, the question of its holding slaves gave rise to the warmest debate in Congress. It was finally settled by an agreement, known as the Missouri Compromise, by which slavery was to be permitted 1821.

What battles did he gain on his way to the city of Mexico? — What triumph did he finally achieve? — When, and by whom, was New Mexico taken? — By whom was California conquered? — When was peace concluded? — What purchase was made of Mexico by the United States at the same time? — What political subjects have produced important difficulties in our country? — What caused difficulty on the admission of Missouri into the Union? — How was it settled?

south of latitude 36° 30′, and not allowed in the vast territory lying north of that parallel. This compromise was annulled in 1854, in Congress, by the passage of the bill relating to the new territories of Kansas and Nebraska.

1832. During General Jackson's administration, so great was the discontent in South Carolina, caused by the heavy duties on imported woollen and cotton goods, that this State threatened to separate from the Union. Jackson's vigorous administration, however, prevented this calamity.

On other political subjects difficulties have arisen; but we have to be thankful, that thus far, God has raised up for us wise and peace-loving statesmen, who have, by conciliatory measures, averted the dangers which threatened our Union. Let us thank Him for the past, and pray that He will make us virtuous citizens, and that He will be pleased so to direct the counsels of our Government, that "righteousness and peace" may be established among us for all generations."

When, and by what act, was the Missouri Compromise annulled? — What caused the discontent in South Carolina in 1832? — What was threatened by that State? — How was the danger prevented? — What great blessing has God, thus far, given to our country? — What favors should we still ask of Him in its behalf?

Review Questions. — How many, and what, administrations have succeeded Madison's? — Of how many, and what, States does the Union now consist?

What Indian wars have arisen since 1830? — Give the account of the war excited by Black-Hawk. — What caused the Seminole war? — What particulars can you state concerning that war? — How long did it last, and when was it ended?

When was Texas admitted into the Union? — What objections had been made to its admission? — In what year did the war with Mexico commence? — What Generals greatly distinguished themselves in that war? — Recount the victories of General Taylor? — Relate the account of General Scott's campaign in Mexico. — When was the treaty of Guadaloupe Hidalgo signed?

What difficulty gave rise to the Missouri Compromise? — By the passage of what bill was it abolished?

What troubles occurred in South Carolina in 1832?

What great blessing has been bestowed upon our country amidst its greatest difficulties? — For what further blessings should we ever pray?

CHAPTER XIX.

THE WEST.

"His prow is westward set,
O'er the calm wave: hail to thy bold,
World-seeking bark, Marquette!"

PEABODY.

AT the opening of the seventeenth century, England, France, and Spain, were the most powerful nations in Europe. 1600.

It is not very wonderful, therefore, that these three governments should have divided among them the new Western World, which their mariners had discovered.

We have seen how England planted the Thirteen Colonies on our sea-bord, and now let us turn to the vast regions of the West and South, where France and Spain held sway, but where now the names of towns and rivers are the only mementoes of these two powerful nations. 1607, to 1732.

The French had planted their colony of New France on the banks of the St. Lawrence, at the time when the zeal of the disciples of Ignatius Loyola was at its height. Her devoted Jesuit Missionaries were willing to brave every peril, endure every hardship, to win converts to their faith; and before the close of the century, Roman Catholic Missions had been planted amid the savage wilds, and still more savage tribes of the Great Lakes and the Mississippi. 1608. 1699.

In 1673, as the Jesuit Marquette, with the French trader, Joliet, left Wisconsin, to explore the Mississippi, 1673.

What were the three leading Governments of Europe in the year 1600? — What territory did they divide among themselves? — In what parts of this land did they respectively plant colonies? — What reminds us of the French and Spanish sway in the South and West? — When, and where, was the Colony of New France founded? — What is said of the zeal and success of the Jesuit Missionaries? — What is related of Marquette and Joliet in 1673?

the former said: "My companion is an envoy of France, to discover new countries, and I am an ambassador from God, to enlighten them with the Gospel."

They floated down the great river Mississippi. The lilies of France were engraven on trees, the cross was erected, and the French pioneer and the Jesuit, took possession of the country.

1634. The Missions of Sault St. Marie, St. Ignatius, and St. Joseph, were founded on the Lakes. Old Kaskaskia,
1685. Peoria, and Vincennes, were planted further west, and
to Fort Chartres, and St. Genevieve, arose on the Missis-
1730. sippi. These are among the oldest settlements in our country.

The French inhabitants of these villages were a happy and contented race. "On the margin of a prairie, or on the borders of some gentle stream, their villages sprung up in long, narrow streets, with the family homesteads so contiguous, that the merry and sociable villagers could carry on their voluble conversation, each from his own door or balcony." *

The men were generally boatmen ("voyageurs"), hunters, and trappers. They delighted in the long hunting and trading excursion among distant Indian tribes, from which they returned, laden with furs and peltries, to relate to wondering ears at home, their tales of perilous adventure.

Holydays, of which their Church furnishes so many, were observed as festivals; and dancing, in which whole communities joined, was a favorite amusement among this light-hearted people.

1682. In the year 1682, the knightly and adventurous La Salle descended the Mississippi. Sailing beyond the mouth of the Arkansas, which Marquette had reached, his little vessel emerged into the broad waters of the Gulf of Mexico. Amid anthems and Te Deums the cross was raised, and La

How did they take possession of the country? — Where were Missions founded, and for what were they distinguished? — What was the character of these French settlers? — What was their occupation? — What were their festivals and amusements? — In what year did La Salle take possession of Louisiana? — In what manner was the possession taken?

* Monnette.

Salle took possession of Louisiana, as he named it in honor of his king, Louis XIV.

Another country was added to New France; but twelve years passed away, before a single French settlement had sprung up within its limits. Two years after his discovery, La Salle, sailing from France, had entered the Gulf of Mexico with a colony. Missing the mouth of the Great River, they sailed westward, and planted a feeble settlement on Matagorda Bay, within the limits of the present State of Texas. 1685.

After two years, spent chiefly in explorations and fruitless efforts to reach the Mississippi, La Salle was murdered by a treacherous companion, and his body left unburied upon a Texan prairie.

In 1699, were founded the first settlements of French Louisiana. In that year, Lemoine D'Iberville, with a little fleet of four vessels, and a colony of two hundred souls, entered the Gulf of Mexico. They built Fort Biloxi, in Mississippi, but for the next twenty years few settlers came to Louisiana, and those who did come were only gold-diggers, and not useful to the colony. 1699.

In 1718, more settlements were planted. Fort Rosalie had gathered a little colony where Natchez now stands, and Bienville had erected on the river a barracks and a few huts, which he named New Orleans, in honor of the Regent of France. 1718.

Under the government of the wise and good Bienville, Louisiana flourished. Plantations of rice, indigo, and cotton, were cultivated. In ten years from its foundation, New Orleans had become a port of commerce, and pleasant cottages, around which grew the fig-tree and the orange, lined the river-banks for many miles, above and below the city. 1736.

In honor of what king was it named? — What attempt was made by La Salle to settle the country he had discovered? — Where did his colony settle? — What was his fate? — When, and by whom, were made the first settlements in Louisiana? — What is said of the number, and character, of the settlers during the next twenty years? — What settlements were added in 1718? — What is said of the government of Bienville? — What of the increase and prosperity of New Orleans?

Long and cruel Indian wars with the Chickasaw and Natchez tribes, checked greatly the early progress of Louisiana, but towards the middle of the century, these had ceased, and the settlements extended farther west, and increased in numbers and prosperity.

In 1758, M. Du Breuil erected the first sugar-mill in the colony, and the cultivation of the cane became a principal object of industry to the population. In seven years, a small ship-load of sugar was exported to France.

1762. Vast, indeed, was the empire which the French had planted in America. For her colony of New France, she claimed the basin of the St. Lawrence and the Great Lakes. "Louisiana," says Bancroft, "was held to embrace the whole valley of the Mississippi. Not a fountain bubbled on the west of the Alleghanies, but was claimed as being within the French empire. Half a mile from the head of the southern branch of the Savannah river, is 'Herbert's Spring,' which flows into the Mississippi; strangers, who drank of it, would say that they had tasted French waters."

From these vast regions, the dominion of France was soon to pass away. It will be remembered, that the "Old French War," of 1755, was brought on by the efforts of the French to connect, by a line of forts and stations, their settlements in Canada with those of Louisiana. In attempting this, they invaded territory claimed by Virginia. The English Governor remonstrated, but the French would not withdraw their claims, and war was declared.

1763. This war lasted eight years, and by the peace of Paris, which concluded it, in 1763, France gave up her possessions in America. In November, of the previous year, she had ceded to Spain the territory west of the Mississippi, extending

What wars checked the prosperity of Louisiana? — At what time had they ceased? — When, and by whom, was the first sugar-mill brought into this colony? — To what extent was the cane cultivated? — What did the colony of New France include? — How does Bancroft describe the extent of Louisiana? — What is said of the duration of the French dominion? — What caused the French war of 1755? — How long did it last? — What did France give up at its close? — What territory had she ceded to Spain the previous year?

from that river to the Pacific, and from its sources to the Gulf of Mexico.

To England was now surrendered all her possessions east of that river, with the exception of the city and island of New Orleans, which was given to Spain.

Spain was the first nation that planted a colony within the present limits of the United States.

On Easter-Sunday, in the year 1512, Ponce de Leon, searching for the fabled Fountain of Youth, landed on our southern coast. That day is called, among the Spaniards, Pascua Florida, and because of this, as well as on account of the brilliant flowers which decked the soil, he gave to this new country the name of Florida. 1512.

The love of adventure and of gold, lured many Spaniards to follow in the footsteps of Ponce de Leon. The most remarkable among these was Hernando de Soto. 1520, to 1540.

He had roused, by his enthusiasm, the bravest and most adventurous of the young nobility of his native country. On the sixth of April, 1538, in a richly furnished armament, consisting of ten vessels, having on board about six hundred gallant youth of Spain and Portugal, amid bursts of martial music, De Soto left the shores of Spain.

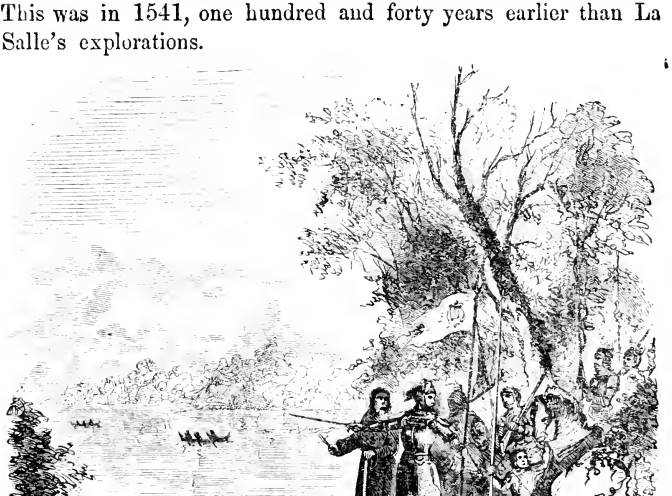
In May, of the following year, with an imposing force of armed men, all filled with high hopes and dreams of untold wealth, he sailed from Cuba on his daring expedition for plunder and for conquest. 1539.

No high or holy purpose animated the hearts of these adven-

What possessions were now ceded to England? — What nation first founded a colony in what is now the United States? — When, and for what object, did Ponce de Leon land in the south? — What name did he give to the region, and why? — Who was Hernando de Soto? — Whom had he persuaded to follow him to this continent? — With how many men and vessels did he sail from Spain? — When, and with what force, did he leave Cuba?

turers. They went in search of *gold*, and fearful was their reward. They were indeed, "filled with many sorrows."

1541. At the end of two years, having wandered through Florida, Alabama, Mississippi, and Louisiana, De Soto, with a remnant of his men, stood upon the banks of the Mississippi. He was the first white man who had gazed upon its waters. This was in 1541, one hundred and forty years earlier than La Salle's explorations.



De Soto on the banks of the Mississippi.

Still further west, De Soto wandered into Arkansas. He found no gold; nothing but wasting disease and Indian hostility. Returning to the river Misssissippi, worn down by hardship and the heart-sickness of hope deferred, he found a grave in its waters. He died on the thirty-first of May, 1542.

What was their object, and their reward? — What were their wanderings previous to their arrival at the Mississippi? — How much earlier was this than La Salle's explorations? — What is said of his subsequent hardships and death?

When four years had gone by, a small remnant of two hundred and fifty men, all that remained of the expedition of De Soto, found its way to the Spanish settlements in Mexico. 1543.

Nothing resulted from these expeditions, save that the Spaniards claimed the country, until 1565, when the fort and town of St. Augustine was founded. This was half a century before the English or the French had planted colonies in the New World.

For nearly two hundred years, Spain did little towards the settlement of Florida. Roman Catholic missions were established for the conversion of the Indian tribes, and zealous missionaries, of the order of St. Francis, were sent among them. St. Augustine and Pensacola, during this long period, were the only important towns.

By the peace of 1763, Spain gave up Florida to England. By the same treaty, she gained from France the vast region of Louisiana west of the Mississippi, and also the island and city of Orleans. 1763.

The population of Louisiana numbered, at this period, thirteen thousand five hundred and fifty souls. They were French, and extremely averse to Spanish rule, and six years passed before the transfer of their province to Spain was finally effected.

The first Spanish Governor did much to increase the ill-will of the French people, but succeeding Governors acted more wisely and virtuously, and in after years, confidence was restored, and Louisiana prospered. St. Louis was founded as a depôt for the fur trade, in 1764. In ten years, it could boast one hundred and twenty good houses, and a population of eight hundred.

What became of the remnant of his followers? — What resulted from these explorations? — When was St. Augustine founded? — How long was this before the English and French planted colonies? — What missions were established in Florida? — How long were Pensacola and St. Augustine the only important towns? — When was Florida ceded to England? — What possessions did Spain acquire at the same time? — What retarded the transfer of Louisiana to Spain? — What course did the Spanish Governors pursue? — When was St. Louis founded, and how rapidly did it increase?

Twenty years after the peace of Paris had divided our country between England and Spain, *another treaty* was concluded. It was the treaty which closed our War of Independence, — the peace of 1783.

By it England gave up a territory extending from the Atlantic to the Mississippi, and from the Great Lakes to the Gulf of Mexico; and the United States became the ruling power in America. Spain still held the country west of the Mississippi, and Florida was restored to her.

During the twenty years' occupation of Florida by the English, from the peace of 1763 to that of 1783, the province had been divided into two portions with separate Governors, and capitals at St. Augustine and Pensacola.

1767. In the year 1767, a colony of Greeks, Corsicans, and Minorcans, was planted at New Smyrna, under circumstances of great cruelty.

Dr. Turnbull, an Englishman, had deluded these poor people from their European homes by fair promises of founding a happy colony in America.

He landed them on the coast of Florida, seventy-four miles south of St. Augustine. The little village of palmetto huts, which they erected, was named New Smyrna. These colonists were reduced to the most wretched and cruel condition of slavery: obliged to labor beyond their strength; without sufficient food or clothes, and subjected to the most inhuman punishments.

1777. For nine years, these wretched people groaned under this harsh servitude. Their numbers decreased, until only six hundred remained of the original fifteen hundred who had left the Mediterranean.

What division of the country was made by the peace of Paris? — What territory did England give up by the treaty of 1783? — What portions were still held by Spain? — What division of Florida was made by the English? — When was the colony at New Smyrna founded, and of whom was it composed? — By what promise had these people been deceived? — Where was the colony of New Smyrna situated? — To what cruelties were the colonists subjected? — How long did their bondage continue, and what was its effect upon their numbers?

At length, they fled to St. Augustine, and implored the aid and protection of the English Governor. His protection was cheerfully granted, and as they refused to return to New Smyrna, the scene of their sufferings, grounds were given them in the vicinity of St. Augustine. Here they founded homes, and here their descendants still live worthy and respected citizens.

The peace of 1783 gave a new impulse to emigration. Previous to this, a number of the Old Thirteen Colonies, who claimed, in right of their charters, the unexplored lands of the west, had sent out bold pioneers to examine the country beyond the Alleghanies.

In the first year of our Revolutionary struggle, Daniel Boone had led his family through the Cumberland Gap from Carolina, and planted the first home in the beautiful region of Kentucky. Before the close of the year, four settlements, at Boonesborough, Harrodsburg, Boiling Springs, and St. Asaph's, had sprung up within the territory. 1775.

During the war, the bold pioneer and soldier, Colonel George Rogers Clarke, captured from the English, by a midnight surprise, the garrison and town of Kaskaskia. The next year, 1779, he performed a march of one hundred and fifty miles through a pathless wilderness, and captured Vincennes. 1778.

The settlements of the west, exposed to Indian hostilities, increased but slowly during the war. From the peace of 1783, may be dated the era of western emigration. Hundreds of families entered Kentucky. Lexington had become a thriving village, and Louisville sprang up on the southern bank of the Ohio.

How did they escape from it? — Where did they finally settle? — How did the peace of 1783 affect emigration? — By whom, and for what purpose, had pioneers been sent westward previously to 1783? — When, and by whom, was Kentucky first settled? — Who was Colonel Clarke? — What place did he capture from the English? — What retarded the settlement of the west during the war? — What is said of the growth of Kentucky after the peace?

Daniel Boone in Kentucky.

The hunters' track through the woods began to give way to the road through which the emigrants' wagon might travel. Agriculture and manufactures were carried on, and in 1787 the first newspaper of the west was printed.

In 1790, the population of Kentucky numbered more than seventy thousand; and in less than two years afterwards, she had entered the Union as an independent State.

The territory north-west of the Ohio was claimed by Massachusetts, Connecticut, New York, and Virginia, under their respective charters. And it was not until the year 1786, that all these States had yielded their claims to the general government.

1787. When this had been done, Congress passed a law erecting this great section of the west into the "North-West

How had it improved up to 1787? — When was it admitted into the Union, and with what population? — By what States was the territory north-west of the Ohio claimed? — What became of these claims? — What law did Congress pass in 1787, respecting this region?

Territory," providing for a certain number of future States to be formed from it, and admitted into the Union when they should number a population of sixty thousand each. From this Territory have sprung five enterprising free States, admitted in the following order: Ohio (1802), Indiana (1816), Illinois (1818), Michigan (1837), and Wisconsin (1848).

In the year 1788, a little barge, built near Pittsburgh, and named, in grateful remembrance of the Pilgrim Fathers, "The Mayflower," floated down the Ohio to the mouth of the Muskingum. It bore a band of hardy pioneers, headed by a son of General Putnam. Soon, at the junction of the rivers, sprang up a little village, named after the unfortunate Queen Maria Antoinette. Marietta was the first settlement within the limits of Ohio. 1788.

Not yet seventy years have passed away, and the Ohio bears its hundreds of steamers, and its banks are lined with beautiful and flourishing towns and villages. Cincinnati, the Queen City of the West, which was not settled until after Marietta, now numbers more than one hundred and sixty thousand inhabitants, and possesses all the refinements and luxuries of the older cities of the Atlantic States.

The tide of emigration still flowed westward. Around the old French settlements in the Illinois country, gathered a population of emigrants from the United States. Year after year, in Indiana, Illinois, and Michigan, their numbers increased. On the broad prairie, and amid the forest, arose the cabin of the backwoodsman.

Soon, these dwellings clustered into villages: the villages became towns, and now, fair cities rise where, less than eighty years ago, the sound of the pioneer's axe alone awoke the echoes of the forest. Detroit, Cleveland, Chicago, and Milwaukie, these beautiful cities of the Lake, are examples of the almost magic growth of the West.

On what condition were States to be admitted from it? — What States, and in what order, have sprung from this territory? — When, and where, was the first settlement in Ohio? — Under what circumstances was it made? — What account is given of Cincinnati? — What is said of the emigration westward? — What cities afford examples of the rapid growth of the west?

Chicago, which in 1831 was a mere trading station amid the wigwams of the Indians, now probably numbers little less than one hundred thousand inhabitants. The grain farms of the prairie send their rich produce to be shipped from this city of the Lake, and it is now the largest grain port in the world.

What is related of the growth and prosperity of Chicago?

REVIEW QUESTIONS. — What European nations divided among themselves the discoveries in the New World?

What Missionaries were active in founding settlements? — Give the account of Marquette and Joliet. — What Missions are among the oldest settlements of our country?

What is said of the character, occupations, and amusements, of the French settlers? — Relate the account of La Salle's explorations and fate. — When, and where, were the first French settlements in Louisiana? — What additions were made to it in 1718? — What was the condition of the settlements in 1736? — What was the extent of the dominion of France in the New World? — What nations became possessed of this domain, and by what means?

Give the account of Ponce de Leon's expedition to Florida. — What were De Soto's adventures and fate? — How long was Florida held by Spain, and what is said of its settlements during that period? — When did Spain acquire Louisiana?

What territory was given by England by the treaty of 1783? — What was the condition of Florida under the English rule?

What settlements were made in the west during the Revolutionary War? — From what does the era of western emigration date? — When was the first newspaper of the west printed? — What States have sprung from what was once the north-west territory? — When was Ohio first settled? — What has been its progress since that time? — Give the account of the rapid growth of the West.

CHAPTER XX.

THE WEST (Continued.)

"Empire to empire swift succeeds,
Each happy, great, and free."

J. K. PAULDING.

THE pioneers of Carolina had, even before the war, penetrated to the banks of the rivers which flow through Tennessee. The feeble settlements formed during the war were sadly ravaged by the fierce and hostile Indian tribes, and for many years the Creek, Choctaw, Cherokee, and Chickasaw tribes were a terror to the settler in the South-Western Territory.

The year after the peace, Nashville was founded, and the settlements on the Cumberland, the Holston, and the Clinch grew rapidly. These settlements were under the government of North Carolina. For a few years they attempted to establish a separate State called Frankland. In this they were not encouraged by the general government. In 1790, when North Carolina gave up her claims, the country was formed into the South-Western Territory. The same year, at Knoxville, was published the first newspaper of the new Territory. In six years more, the South-Western Territory had become the State of Tennessee. 1784.

And this new member of the confederacy became the mother of many States. It is said that from Tennessee have gone forth more colonies "for the peopling of the great Valley of the Mississippi, than from any other State in the American Union."

From Tennessee, Mississippi and Alabama received their American settlers, and in a short time the population on the Alabama, the Tombigbee, and the Yazoo rivers, outnumbered the old Spanish settlements on the Gulf.

From what State were the pioneers of Tennessee?—By what Indian tribes were their settlements disturbed?—When was Nashville founded?—On what rivers were settlements made?—Under what government were they?—When was the South-Western Territory organized?—When did it become a State?—When was its first newspaper printed?—What is said of emigration from Tennessee?—What States received their American settlers from Tennessee?

Mississippi had been erected into a Territory as early as 1798. The first newspaper was printed in 1802, and in the following year, "The Mississippi Society for the Acquirement and Dissemination of Useful Knowledge" was founded by the intelligent settlers amid the forests of the new Territory. Jefferson College was founded—the Protestant religion was preached by zealous missionaries. Natchez had become a chartered city, and had established a charity hospital. Yet for many years, but three roads, or horse-paths, traversed Mississippi Territory, and fears of cruel Indian hostilities retarded the progress and prosperity of the settlements.

1812, to 1815. The Creek Indians, instigated by the English traders during the war of 1812, committed fearful ravages upon the settlements of Mississippi and Alabama. General Jackson was sent into the Indian country, and many severe battles were fought. Within two years of the peace

1817. of 1815, the population of Mississippi Territory had so increased that she became a State, and in two years more, Alabama was admitted into the Union.

It will be remembered that the peace of 1763 divided our country between England and Spain; and that, twenty years later, by the treaty of 1783, England gave up her claim to the United States. We have followed the hardy pioneers of the latter, and have seen how, one after another, their settlements became Territories, and their Territories, States.

To Spain, you will remember, was ceded Florida and the vast territory west of the Mississippi, known as Louisiana.

When did Mississippi become a Territory?—How did the early inhabitants of it show their love of knowledge?—What is said of the roads?—What cause retarded the prosperity of the country?—By whom were the Creeks excited to hostilities?—Who was sent against them?—When did Mississippi and Alabama respectively become States?—Between what nations did the peace of 1763 divide our country?—When did England give up her claim to the United States?—What portion was held by Spain?

During the next twenty years, from the peace of 1783 to the year 1803, Louisiana increased rapidly in population. Many French emigrants came to the colony, and people from the United States were encouraged to settle in the Spanish Territories.

In 1780, a town was founded on the west bank of the Mississippi, by American citizens, and named New Madrid, in honor of the capital of Spain. In that year the population of the Spanish provinces numbered more than forty thousand.

Education received but little attention in Louisiana, and as late as the year 1791, the colony which Spain had possessed nearly thirty years, could scarcely boast a school. In New Orleans, there was one school, taught by a few Spanish nuns. In 1791, many French refugees from St. Domingo came into Louisiana, and engaged in teaching. Owing to their efforts, schools became more general.

In the year 1800, Spain, involved in the wars of Europe, was compelled to resign her province of Louisiana to Napoleon of France. For two brief years, France again had a claim in America; but Bonaparte, foreseeing the difficulty of defending this distant colony, signified his willingness to transfer it to the United States. In April, 1803, Louisiana, which then contained a population of nearly fifty thousand, was purchased by the United States. 1800.

This purchase gave America the vast regions west of the Mississippi, and eagerly did her enterprising people hasten to enter in and possess the land. Territorial governments were formed, and soon four flourishing States were added to the Union from the old Spanish territory of Louisiana. These States entered the Union in the following order. Louisiana, in 1812; Missouri, in 1821; Arkansas, in 1836; and Iowa, in 1803.

What is said of the increase of population in Louisiana?—When, and where, was New Madrid founded?—What was the population of the Spanish provinces at that time?—What was the state of education in Louisiana?—By whose efforts did schools become more general?—When, and to whom, did Spain resign up Louisiana?—Why was Napoleon willing to transfer it to the United States?—When was Louisiana purchased by the United States?—How many States were formed from this territory?—In what order did they enter the Union?

1845. From this vast region also have been formed the Territories of Minnesota, Nebraska, and Kansas; and also Indian Territory, a tract entirely occupied and governed by Indian tribes.

Spain still held Florida until the year 1819, when it was ceded to the United States. It entered the Union in 1845.

During Jefferson's administration, the treaty of 1803 was signed, and to his enterprising mind and enlarged views are due the American explorations beyond the Rocky Mountains. Following the plans which Jefferson drew up, the bold travelers, Lewis and Clarke, ascended the Missouri to its sources. Then crossing the Rocky Mountains and descending the Columbia River for six hundred miles, they reached the Pacific Ocean in November, 1805, having employed nearly a year and a half in their explorations. This long and interesting, but perilous journey, was accomplished, with admirable skill. The Indians were won by kind words and gifts.

1804.

As early as the year 1792, an American trader, Captain Gray, of Boston, had cast anchor in the waters of the great river of Oregon, and named it for his vessel the "Columbia." But no route across the Continent had been discovered until the enterprise of Lewis and Clarke threw open to the United States this vast territory, so valuable for its furs and peltries.

When the report of this exploring expedition was made known, John Jacob Astor, a citizen of New York, who had long been engaged in the fur-trade, formed the bold design of planting a large trading station at the mouth of the Columbia, to connect with a line of trading posts along that river and the Missouri.

1806.

This plan of Mr. Astor's met with great favor from President Jefferson, and, in 1810, the Pacific Fur Company

1810.

What Territories have also been formed from the old Spanish Louisiana?—When was Florida ceded to the United States?—When did it become a State?—What exploration was made by Lewis and Clarke?—When did they reach the Pacific Ocean?—How did they gain the favor of the Indians?—When did Captain Gray anchor in the Columbia River?—Who first explored a route across the Continent?—What station was planted by John Jacob Astor?—For what purpose was this station formed?—When was the Pacific Fur Company organized?

was organized. During this year two expeditions were sent out to Oregon—one by sea, in the Tonquin, around Cape Horn; and the other across the Rocky Mountains. The Tonquin reached the mouth of the Columbia in 1811, and founded on its southern bank the little settlement which they named Astoria. 1811. Owing to adverse circumstances the splendid project of Mr. Astor for the occupancy of Oregon was never carried out. During the war of 1812, the British "North-Western Fur Company" took possession of Astoria.

Not to the fur-trader, nor to the agricultural colonist, but to the zealous missionary of the Cross, was this vast region to owe her first American colonization. Thirty years had passed by since Lewis and Clarke had penetrated the

> "Continuous woods
> Where rolls the Oregon, and hears no sound
> Save his own dashings;"

and yet no permanent settlement had been founded there. At length, in October of the year 1834, a little band of Methodist Missionaries, ended, at Fort Vancouver, on the Columbia, their long and toilsome journey through the wilderness. Here they opened a school, and began their labor of love among the Indians and traders.

A few years previous, two Oregon Indians had accompanied the trappers to St. Louis, and begged that teachers might be sent among them to give them "the true knowledge of the Great Spirit." It was in answer to this touching appeal that the Missionaries were sent out. 1834. In a few months they removed from Fort Vancouver to the beautiful valley of the Willamette. In the year 1838, a large and important Missionary expedition, consisting of mechanics, as well as teachers, proceeded to Oregon by way of the Sandwich Islands. They joined their brethren on the Willamette, and in the course of a very few years,

What expeditions were sent to Oregon in 1810?—When, and where, was Astoria founded?—What is said of the failure of Mr. Astor's project?—What became of Astoria?—Who were the first American colonists of this region?—How long after Lewis and Clarke's exploration did Oregon remain unsettled?—What Missionary station was established there in 1834?—What appeal led to the establishment of this mission?—To what place was the Mission removed?—What Mission proceeded to Oregon in 1838?

several important Mission Stations had sprung up in this most fertile and beautiful valley of Oregon.

For many years the claim of the United States to this territory was disputed by Great Britain. In June, 1846, however, a treaty was signed, by which our claim was allowed as far North as latitude 49°. Since that year the emigration to this region has rapidly increased. Towns and cities have been founded, and Oregon has furnished from its vast bounds the new Territory of Washington.

By the Treaty with Mexico, in 1848, the United States gained a large tract of country on the Pacific, south of Oregon. This region has since been divided into the State of California and the Territories of New Mexico and Utah. It had all, at one time, belonged to Spain. As early as 1769, Spanish Catholic Missionaries had established Missions, or Presidios, as they were called, in Upper California. The first of these was at San Diego.

1769.

By the year 1800, there were sixteen of these Missions scattered through Upper California. The Indians were gathered into them, and the padres, or Roman Catholic priests taught them the arts of civilization. They cultivated the land and built spacious and handsome dwellings of adobe or sun-dried bricks.

The Padres ruled their Indian converts, but their power was mildly exercised, and for many years the Presidios were very happy communities. These Mission lands, which comprised, perhaps, eight millions of acres, declined after Mexico had thrown off the Spanish yoke. They then fell into possession of the Mexican government. The Padres were driven away, or their authority taken from them; the Indians fell into habits of sloth and idleness, and the Missions

1833.

1845.

What nation disputed the claim of the United States to this Territory?—When, and how, was the difficulty settled?—What is said of the subsequent increase of the Territory?—What tract was gained from Mexico in 1848?—How has it been since divided?—To whom had this region formerly belonged?—What Missions had been established in it?—Who were instructed in these Missions?—What progress did the Indians make in civilization?—What is said of the rule of the Padres?—What became of these mission lands?

were gradually abandoned. In 1846, during the war with Mexico, the United States took possession of many of them.

In the summer of 1848, after the treaty with Mexico had secured to the United States the country of California, news of gold discoveries there reached the Atlantic States. Mr. Sutter, a Swiss emigrant, had settled himself on the American fork of the Sacramento river. He named his settlement New Helvetia in, honor of his native country. Helvetia being the ancient name of Switzerland.

About fifty miles above the fort which Mr. Sutter had built, there grew a valuable species of pine tree which he wished to have cut down and sawed into lumber. He employed a man to build him a saw-mill; a dam and a race were also made. The water rushing into the race with a strong current deposited a large bed of mud and gravel. Dec. 1847.

One day Mr. Marshall (the builder of the saw-mill) observed glittering particles in this mass. Being sure that they were gold, he told Mr. Sutter of the discovery, and the two agreed to keep the secret. It was soon known, however, and before three months had gone by, four thousand men were at work in the vicinity, gathering gold valued from sixteen to forty-eight dollars a day. 1848.

When the news of the gold discoveries reached the States, and there was no longer any doubt that California was the true El-Dorado, thousands flocked to her shores. The long, painful march across the plains, exposed to tribes of hostile Indians, amid deserts, and across the snows of the Sierra Nevada; the deadly climate of the Darien Isthmus, and the perilous voyage around Cape Horn, all were eagerly undertaken in the search for gold. In 1849, between the months of April and January, nearly forty thousand emigrants arrived at the port of San Francisco.

The gold diggings presented a curious scene of eager toil. Men used to all the comforts of home were found gathered there in rude huts or canvass tents, under a burning sun, washing for

When were the gold discoveries in California made?—What circumstances led to them?—Relate the particulars.—What effect had this upon emigration to California?—What is said of the journey thither, and the motive which led to it?—How many emigrants arrived at San Francisco in 1849?—What is said of the scenes at the gold diggings?

gold. Some with tin-pans, others with the close woven Indian baskets, or a rude machine called a cradle; all eager for gain, and excited and lured on by the success of some of their number. From one locality, two men, in the course of one week, had obtained gold to the amount of $10,000.

Still more singular was the scene which San Francisco presented. This quiet, dull town, whose harbor had been rarely visited, save by the lonely fishing vessels or whalers of the Pacific, now became a port of nations. Through the Golden Gate, the portal to the beautiful harbor of San Francisco, "crowded the shipping of the world, mast behind mast, and vessel behind vessel, the flags of all nations fluttering in the breeze."

The canvass tents, wooden houses, almost huts, of the new comers, soon gave place to three-story ware-houses, hotels, dwellings, market-houses, and theatres. Porters, carts, workmen, and new buildings gave an air of busy life to the scene. The city was soon thronged with people of all nations; even the grave Chinaman now walked its streets, and introduced into California the peculiar dress, dwellings, and customs of the Celestial Empire.

Where gold was so abundant, the price of every article was extravagant. Seventy-five cents was charged for a boiled egg; eight dollars a dozen was paid for washing clothes; and ten or twelve dollars for a pair of shoes. In some instances at the mines, one hundred dollars was charged for a barrel of flour.

In the year 1850, California was admitted into the Union. San Francisco had become a city with a population of about twenty thousand. In 1853, it numbered perhaps sixty thousand inhabitants. Some twenty churches have been built, and thirteen daily newspapers published.

Congress has appropriated half a million of acres for the formation of a school-fund in California, and numerous public schools, as well as many academies, have been already established.

Says Bayard Taylor: "Like the magic seed of the Indian

How did San Francisco contrast with its former state?—With what kind of a population was it thronged?—What was the effect of these things upon the prices of labor and food?—To what extent has San Francisco increased?—What provision has been made for education in California?—Repeat the quotation from Bayard Taylor.

juggler, which grew, blossomed, and bore fruit before the eyes of his spectators, San Francisco seemed to have accomplished in a day the growth of half a century."

Of New Mexico and Utah, the other territories which have been secured to the United States by the late treaty with Mexico, we have but little of interest to relate. In New Mexico there are very few settlers from the United States. The inhabitants are nearly all Mexicans or descendants of the early Spanish settlers.

In Utah, the Mormons, a new sect of religionists, have established themselves. They went thither in 1847, and now they number perhaps fifty thousand. The country occupied by them they call Deseret, which, with them, signifies "The Land of the Honey Bee."

They have built a city on the banks of the river Jordan. They have so named the river because, like the Jordan of the Holy Land, it takes its rise in a fresh water lake, flows through a valley surrounded by mountains, and discharges its waters into a salt lake. Lake Utah, and the Great Salt Lake of Utah Territory, correspond in the character of their waters with the Sea of Galilee, and the Dead Sea of Palestine.

What is said of New Mexico and Utah?—Where have the Mormons settled?—How many do they now number?—What do they call their country?—On what river have they built a city?—Why do they thus name the river?

REVIEW QUESTIONS. — How early were settlements made in the South-West Territory?—Under what government were they?—What State did this Territory afterwards become?—What part has Tennessee taken in settling other States?

When was Mississippi made a Territory?—When did it become a State?—What division of the country was made by the peace of 1763?—What region was called Louisiana at that time?—When was it sold to the United States?—What States and Territories have been formed from it?

What region was explored by Lewis and Clarke, and when?—What attempts were made to plant trading stations in Oregon?—Give an account of the Missions to this Territory?—When, and how, was the disputed claim to Oregon settled?

What Territory was gained from Mexico in 1848?—What is said of the Catholic Missions in Upper California?—When were the gold regions discovered?—What has been the effect of the discovery upon the condition of California?—What account is given of New Mexico and Utah?

CHAPTER XXI.

PROGRESS.

"Thou shalt bless the Lord thy God for the good land which he hath given thee."—DEUTERONOMY viii. 10.

THE Territory of the United States in the year 1785 was about 800,000 square miles, and now it covers an area of little less than 3,000,000.

The population numbered at the period of the Revolution only 3,000,000, and now it is more than eight times that number.

At the close of the War of Independence, New York, Philadelphia, and Boston were not as populous as many cities now, in States which had not then a single white inhabitant.

The western portions of New York, Pennsylvania, and Virginia, were still a wilderness. The solitary hunter's cabin or frontier fort stood where now rise the spires of Utica, Buffalo, Syracuse, and Wheeling.

Farther west, the hunter's rifle or the stroke of the pioneer's axe alone awoke the echoes of the forest. Now, fair towns and cities adorn the west, and new villages are almost daily springing up along the borders of the great rivers, and beautiful lakes, and the tracks of the numerous railways, which intersect the country.

The love of religion was brought to America in the hearts and habits of its early settlers. This is especially true of New England.

What was the area of the United States in 1785?—What is the present extent?—What was the population at the close of the war, and what is its present number of inhabitants?—What is said of New York, Boston, and Philadelphia, at that time?—What was the condition of New York, Pennsylvania, and Virginia?—How were the localities of our large western towns then marked?—Describe the features of the extreme west then, and tell how the same country appears now?—What feeling strongly pervaded the bosom of the early settlers, and in which of the colonies was it pre-eminent?

That the feeling which built the Pilgrim meeting-house at Plymouth, and laid the corner-stone of the old church at Jamestown, has grown and strengthened by the lapse of time, is shown by the fact, that there are now more than 40,000 churches and 30,000 ministers in our land.

Nor has this spirit been shown in the building of churches only. Every one must feel the pervading influence of Christian charity in the minds of this people, who would visit the beautiful Retreats for the Insane, the Homes for the Blind, the Deaf and Dumb, and the Orphan, in many of our cities; or the Hospitals for the sick, the aged, and the infirm, or any of the many thousands of benevolent institutions which are found not only in the Atlantic States, but throughout the length and breadth of our land.

The missionary spirit which glowed in early days in the hearts of Eliot, Brainerd, and the Mayhews, has year by year grown warmer and stronger. It has established societies, raised money, and planted Missions, not only in our own but in heathen lands. The Missionary annals of America enrol the names of many a Christian hero. And large sums of money are annually contributed for the support of Missions in various parts of the world.

The first Missionary Society was established in 1810, and the American Bible Society was founded in 1816. The latter has distributed, since its institution, over seven and a half millions of Bibles and Testaments, in thirty-four different languages. Sunday Schools were first established in 1816. Now, nearly every Church in our land has connected with it a Sabbath School, and the teachers may be numbered by thousands.

The first printing-press established in the country, was set up at Cambridge, in 1638, and published "The Freeman's Call" and an Almanac. In 1700, there were four printing-presses in the

---

How have their descendants exhibited the same love for the religion of their fathers.—By what other means have the people evinced a spirit of Christian benevolence?—Name some of the early missionaries to, and in our country, and tell what effect their example has had on those who have followed them.—When was the first Missionary Society of the United States established?—What can you say of the American Bible Society?—When, and where, was the first printing-press established, and what was the name of the first paper printed?

colonies. At the opening of the next century, we find three hundred. They are now so multiplied that the census gives no account of them.

Whereas the most rapid presses in the time of Franklin could print but 250 impressions in an hour, now one press in Philadelphia throws off about 20,000 printed sheets in the same time.

The first newspaper appeared in Boston, in 1704; in Philadelphia, in 1719; and in New York, in 1733. In 1775, there were thirty-five newspapers in the colonies; they were printed on little coarse sheets of paper. Even those issued as late as the year 1800 would be regarded as curiosities among the 500,000,000 of large, fine newspaper sheets which now issue yearly from the press of the United States.

The first Post-Office was established in New York, in 1710, and now the number exceeds 25,000.

In the early days of the colonies there were but few books printed. A few sermons, poems, and histories remain, however, as specimens of the early literature of our country.

Among the most curious are Cotton Mather's "Magnalia Christi Americana," an ecclesiastical history, in one large folio volume; "A Looking-Glass for the times," published by Dr. Franklin's grandfather; and Johnson's "Wonder-Working Providence of Zion's Saviour in New England."

Towards the close of the eighteenth century, many valuable books appeared. Among them were the works of President Edwards, Dr. Franklin, Dr. Dwight, and the political writings of Adams, Jefferson, Hamilton, Madison, and other distinguished statesmen.

During the present century, distinguished authors have appeared in almost every department of literature and science, and their works are not only read and admired throughout their own country, but are translated into many foreign tongues.

What can you say of the improvements in the art of printing since the time of Franklin.—When, and where, was the first newspaper published?—How would a newspaper issued in 1800 compare with those of our day?—Where was the first Post-Office established?—What books, published then, are extant now?—When did more valuable works appear?—Name some of them.—What is said of the American authors in this century?

We have seen how our ancestors of New England and the Middle States planted schools, and cherished with pride and self-denial the infant colleges of the colonies.

The love of knowledge which has been such a marked peculiarity of American character, has raised since the Revolution nearly 90,000 institutions of learning, of which over 80,000 are public schools.

In all the new States and Territories, large grants of land have been made by Congress for the support of common schools. These common schools, particularly in the large cities furnish instruction in many of the higher branches of learning. The Philadelphia High School, New York Free Academy, Boston Latin School, the High Schools of Baltimore, Cincinnati, St. Louis, and other cities, are examples of this.

In the south, where the population is scattered, public schools are less numerous, yet many excellent private institutions exist, where the children of the planters may obtain a good education.

There are now in the United States 118 Colleges, 17 Law Schools, and 36 Medical Schools. The first Medical School was founded in Philadelphia, as early as 1765.

In the early colonial times, most of the ministers of religion were sent from England. By degrees they were educated in this country, and in the year 1807, Andover, perhaps the first distinct Theological School in the world, was founded. Now, there are more than forty Theological Schools in the United States

In the Fine Arts, America began in the last century with the genius of West, Stuart, Copley, and Trumbull, of which she may justly be proud.

Although these arts received originally but little encouragement,

---

How did our ancestors regard schools and colleges? — How have they exhibited this regard?—What particular evidence is given of attention to Public School instruction?—What High Schools are mentioned?—What is said of the instruction given in them?—What is said of education at the South?—Mention the number of Colleges, Law, and Medical Schools, existing in the United States.—How was this country first supplied with ministers?—When was Andover founded, and what is said of it? — Name some distinguished American painters, and tell the century in which they lived?

a new impulse has been given, and these painters, with the added names of Allston, Sully, Peale, and the sculptors Powers and Greenhough, give evidence of the native talent which our country possesses.

In scientific inventions and discoveries, so many of a most useful and practical character have come from the United States, that American ingenuity has become proverbial.

In the middle of the last century, Dr. Franklin, experimenting with his kite on the open fields near the spot where now stands the Institution for the Blind, in Philadelphia, discovered some of the wonders of electricity, and invented the lightning-rod.

Nearly a century later, Professor Morse, of New York, disclosed still further the wondrous powers of this mysterious agent, in the discovery of the magnetic telegraph. The first telegraphic line of wires over which the magic message was conveyed, were stretched between Washington and Baltimore, in June, 1844; and now, in the United States alone, there are more than forty thousand miles of telegraph wire, over which intelligence is borne with the rapidity of thought. June, 1844.

The word uttered by the statesman is heard, not only by the comparative few who gather in the Capitol, but while he is yet speaking, the busy mysterious wire is bearing it beyond the Alleghanies, and the Mississippi, and the Great Lakes; and the message comes almost simultaneously to St. Louis and New Orleans.

A telegraph between America and Europe has been projected, by a submarine line of telegraph wires, stretching from Newfoundland to Ireland. That part from the American continent to Newfoundland is already in progress.

The first rail-road of any considerable length in the United States, was laid in 1831, between Camden and Amboy, in New

In the early history of our country, did the fine arts receive merited encouragement? — Who, in later days, have shown that there is talent only needing development? — What is said of scientific inventions and discoveries? — Tell what you know of Dr. Franklin. — Who discovered the magnetic telegraph? — Between what cities was the first message passed? — How many miles are now embraced within the influence of the wires? — Describe the astonishing effect of this invention? — What can you say of the submarine telegraph? — When was the first rail-road laid?

Jersey, a distance of sixty-four miles. In South Carolina, in 1833, a rail-road of one hundred and thirty-six miles was laid between Charleston and Hamburg. This South Carolina rail-road, at the time of its construction, was the longest in the world. The first steam-engine locomotive was built in Philadelphia, in the fall of 1832. Now, there are twenty thousand miles of rail-road in the United States, and twelve thousand in process of construction.

In 1824, De Witt Clinton dug the first spade-full of earth thrown out of the grand Erie Canal. At the present day, about four thousand miles of canal bear the mineral and agricultural wealth of inland districts to the seaport towns.

In the autumn of 1807, the inhabitants of Albany read in the "Albany Gazette," the following remarkable advertisement: "The North river steamboat will leave Paulus Hook on Friday, the fourth of September, at nine o'clock in the morning, and arrive at Albany on Saturday, at nine in the evening." The fare seven dollars.

And the little steamer Clermont did reach Albany in thirty-six hours, to the unbounded astonishment and admiration of the wondering people on the banks of the Hudson. What a change! Not yet fifty years have passed. Our thousands of steamers are floating palaces, and the humblest ferry-boat far surpasses the wonderful invention of Robert Fulton.

The first passage by steam to Europe, was probably made in 1819, by the steamship Savannah, from New York to Liverpool.

Very beautiful aqueducts and suspension-bridges, water-works, and gas-works, have been erected, adding to the elegance of our country, as well as contributing to the comfort of the inhabitants.

In mechanic arts, some idea of the inventive genius of the United States may be gathered from the immense number of

What number of miles are now included in its limits? — When, where, and by whom, were canals commenced, and what has been their progress? — In what year did the first steamboat ascend the North river? — What change has fifty years produced in this mode of travelling? — To whom are we indebted for this invention? — In what year was the Atlantic first crossed by steamboats, and between what cities did the vessel sail? — What works of internal improvement now mark the face of our country? — Give the number of patents that have been issued this year alone?

patents for new constructions which have been issued from the Patent Office during the past year alone.

The cotton-gin, a machine for separating the seed from the cotton, was invented by Eli Whitney, while at Savannah, in 1792. This invention has greatly increased the value of southern cotton, and rendered the name of its author famous in the annals of useful inventions.

Rhode Island led the way in the manufacture of cotton. The first cotton-mills were erected at Pawtucket, in 1790, and now the entire annual value of the cotton manufactures in the United States, is not less, probably, than seventy millions of dollars. The first cotton exported was to England, in the year 1785, and now the exports of one year alone amount to one hundred millions of dollars.

Industry marks the character of the population of the United States, although varying greatly in character with the different sections of the Union.

In the Gulf States, we find the sugar-planter raising the sugar-cane, and preparing it for market, in mills erected on his own estate. In Georgia and the Carolinas, the large slave population is employed in the cotton-plantations, picking by hand the beautiful light cotton, as it bursts from the pod, separating the seed with the cotton-gin, and packing it in bales for market.

On the sea-shore, we should find the rice-plantations, and in other sections, the tar-burners and lumberers. In Virginia, we should find large tobacco estates, and corn-plantations, employing the industry of the Old Dominion; whilst in the western portions of the State, iron furnaces and extensive salt-works are to be found.

By whom was the cotton-gin invented? — Give the design of that machine. — In what year, and where, was it first used, and what has been its influence on the value of southern cotton? — Where, and when, were the first cotton-mills erected? — In what year did we first export cotton? — What is a leading characteristic of the people of the United States, and how does this vary? — How are the inhabitants on the Gulf employed? — How are those in Georgia and the Carolinas striving for wealth? — What business prevails on the coast of those States, and what is the employment of those in the interior? — From what sources does Virginia derive its wealth, and how do these vary in the more western parts of the State?

Passing into the Middle States, new scenes of industry attract our interest. There, the busy hum of the factory, the noise of the steam-engine, the whirr of machinery, and the loud clatter of the foundry and the rolling-mill, tell the tale of labor. The mineral wealth of these States employs the labor of large masses of the population.

The anthracite coal trade of Pennsylvania, which, in 1820, amounted to only three hundred and sixty-five tons, has already swelled to more than six millions of tons, of an annual value of thirty millions of dollars.

New England, with her numerous manufactures, may almost be called the land of the loom, and yet she has various and numberless other resources for the industry of her thrifty people.

Forty thousand of her population are employed in her fisheries. Her ship-yards afford employment to a considerable number. In New Hampshire and Vermont, a large population is engaged in rearing cattle, and horses, and sheep; whilst in Maine, ship-building, lumbering, and packing ice for exportation, employ many hands.

In New England, as throughout every portion of our country, the toil of the farmer has scattered its beautiful and valuable results. Agriculture employs nearly three millions of the population of the United States.

Following the course of the Great Lakes, we should visit the copper-mines of Lake Superior, and descend into the rich mining districts of Wisconsin, Missouri, and Illinois. Here are found rich beds of copper, iron, and lead ore.

Or further south, crossing the Alleghanies, and traversing the valley of the Mississippi, where lie the beautiful States and territories of the west, we should find still other scenes of industry.

Give the various occupations of the Middle States, and tell how many of the inhabitants find employment? — What mineral increases the wealth of Pennsylvania? — Give its annual value. — Why may New England be called the "land of the loom?" — Does her wealth consist entirely of manufactories? — In what other ways are her people employed? — Give the various occupations of each of the New England States. — What amount of land is under cultivation in New England? — Describe the mineral resources of the country around the Great Lakes. — As we travel westward, how do we find the inhabitants employed?

There are the corn and wheat farms of the prairie, surrounded by hedges of osage orange, rivalling in beauty the far-famed hawthorn hedges of England. There, too, are the hemp-fields of Kentucky and Missouri, and the vineyards of the Ohio, cultivated by native and German vine-dressers.

Such is the beautiful country which God has given us for our heritage. But whilst we repeat the grateful words of Israel's king, "He hath not dealt so with any nation," let us remember too, that only blessed is the people whose God is the Lord; and that His Word hath told us, that it is "righteousness that exalteth a nation."

In which of the States is Hemp cultivated, and where do we find vineyards? — What efforts are made in the west for education, and how have the people shown their appreciation of learning? — Against what difficulties have they been obliged to strive? — What is said of Cincinnati? — What should we be led to say in considering our advantages?

REVIEW QUESTIONS. — How will the area, population, and resources of the United States, compare now with those at the close of the Revolutionary War? — What spirit, in reference to Christianity and benevolent institutions, pervades the country?

How have the people shown a love of knowledge, and what results have followed?

What is a leading trait of American character, and how is this exhibited?

Give the various sources of wealth and industry in the different parts of the Union?

THE END.